

---

# SpinalHDL Documentation

**SpinalHDL contributors**

**Nov 15, 2022**



# CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>FAQ</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	What is the overhead of SpinalHDL generated RTL compared to human written VHDL/Verilog? .	1
1.2	What if SpinalHDL becomes unsupported in the future? . . . . .	1
1.3	Does SpinalHDL keep comments in generated VHDL/verilog? . . . . .	1
1.4	Could SpinalHDL scale up to big projects? . . . . .	1
1.5	How SpinalHDL came to be . . . . .	1
1.6	Why develop a new language when there is VHDL/Verilog/SystemVerilog . . . . .	2
1.7	How to use an unreleased version of SpinalHDL (but committed on git) . . . . .	2
<b>2</b>	<b>Support</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	Communication channels . . . . .	3
2.2	Commercial support . . . . .	3
<b>3</b>	<b>Users</b>	<b>5</b>
3.1	Compagnies . . . . .	5
3.2	Repositories . . . . .	5
<b>4</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>7</b>
4.1	Getting Started . . . . .	7
4.2	Motivation . . . . .	10
4.3	Presentation . . . . .	10
4.4	Scala Guide . . . . .	10
4.5	Help for VHDL people . . . . .	20
4.6	Cheatsheets . . . . .	30
<b>5</b>	<b>Data types</b>	<b>33</b>
5.1	Bool . . . . .	33
5.2	Bits . . . . .	36
5.3	UInt/SInt . . . . .	40
5.4	SpinalEnum . . . . .	48
5.5	Bundle . . . . .	51
5.6	Vec . . . . .	53
5.7	UFix/SFix . . . . .	55
5.8	Floating . . . . .	58
5.9	Introduction . . . . .	60
<b>6</b>	<b>Structuring</b>	<b>63</b>
6.1	Component and hierarchy . . . . .	63
6.2	Area . . . . .	66
6.3	Function . . . . .	67
6.4	Clock domains . . . . .	68
6.5	Instantiate VHDL and Verilog IP . . . . .	75
<b>7</b>	<b>Semantic</b>	<b>81</b>
7.1	Assignments . . . . .	81

7.2	When/Switch/Mux . . . . .	82
7.3	Rules . . . . .	85
<b>8</b>	<b>Sequential logic</b>	<b>89</b>
8.1	Registers . . . . .	89
8.2	RAM/ROM . . . . .	91
<b>9</b>	<b>Design errors</b>	<b>99</b>
9.1	Assignment overlap . . . . .	99
9.2	Clock crossing violation . . . . .	100
9.3	Combinational loop . . . . .	102
9.4	Hierarchy violation . . . . .	103
9.5	Io bundle . . . . .	104
9.6	Latch detected . . . . .	105
9.7	No driver on . . . . .	105
9.8	NullPointerException . . . . .	106
9.9	Register defined as component input . . . . .	107
9.10	Scope violation . . . . .	108
9.11	Spinal can't clone class . . . . .	108
9.12	Unassigned register . . . . .	109
9.13	Unreachable is statement . . . . .	110
9.14	Width mismatch . . . . .	111
9.15	Introduction . . . . .	112
<b>10</b>	<b>Other language features</b>	<b>115</b>
10.1	Utils . . . . .	115
10.2	Assertions . . . . .	117
10.3	Formal . . . . .	118
10.4	Analog and inout . . . . .	119
10.5	VHDL and Verilog generation . . . . .	121
10.6	Introduction . . . . .	126
<b>11</b>	<b>Libraries</b>	<b>129</b>
11.1	Utils . . . . .	129
11.2	Stream . . . . .	132
11.3	Flow . . . . .	140
11.4	Fragment . . . . .	141
11.5	State machine . . . . .	142
11.6	VexRiscv (RV32IM CPU) . . . . .	146
11.7	Bus Slave Factory . . . . .	147
11.8	Bus . . . . .	149
11.9	Com . . . . .	154
11.10	IO . . . . .	155
11.11	Graphics . . . . .	157
11.12	EDA . . . . .	159
11.13	Introduction . . . . .	160
<b>12</b>	<b>Simulation</b>	<b>161</b>
12.1	Setup and installation . . . . .	161
12.2	Boot a simulation . . . . .	163
12.3	Accessing signals of the simulation . . . . .	164
12.4	Clock domains . . . . .	166
12.5	Thread-full API . . . . .	168
12.6	Thread-less API . . . . .	168
12.7	Simulation engine . . . . .	169
12.8	Examples . . . . .	170
12.9	Introduction . . . . .	174
12.10	How SpinalHDL simulate the hardware . . . . .	175
12.11	Performance . . . . .	175

<b>13 Examples</b>	<b>177</b>
13.1 Simple ones . . . . .	177
13.2 Intermediates ones . . . . .	184
13.3 Advanced ones . . . . .	202
13.4 Introduction . . . . .	214
<b>14 Legacy</b>	<b>215</b>
14.1 RiscV . . . . .	215
14.2 pinsec . . . . .	216
<b>15 Developers area</b>	<b>231</b>
15.1 Bus Slave Factory Implementation . . . . .	231
15.2 How to HACK this documentation . . . . .	238
15.3 Types . . . . .	241
<b>16 Welcome to SpinalHDL's documentation!</b>	<b>251</b>
16.1 Site purpose and structure . . . . .	251
16.2 What is SpinalHDL ? . . . . .	251
16.3 Getting started . . . . .	252
16.4 Links . . . . .	252



## 1.1 What is the overhead of SpinalHDL generated RTL compared to human written VHDL/Verilog?

The overhead is null, SpinalHDL is not an HLS approach. Its goal is not to translate any arbitrary code into RTL, but to provide a powerful language to describe RTL and rise the abstraction level.

## 1.2 What if SpinalHDL becomes unsupported in the future?

This question has two sides.

First: SpinalHDL generates VHDL/Verilog files, which means that SpinalHDL will be supported by all EDA tools for many decades.

Second: If there is a bug in SpinalHDL and there is no longer support to fix it, it's not a deadly situation, because the SpinalHDL compiler is fully open source. Maybe you will be able to fix the issue in few hours. Remember how much time it takes to EDA companies to fix issues or to add new features in their closed tools.

## 1.3 Does SpinalHDL keep comments in generated VHDL/verilog?

No, it doesn't. Generated files should be considerate as a netlist. For example, when you compile C code, do you care about your comments in the generated assembly code?

## 1.4 Could SpinalHDL scale up to big projects?

Yes, some experiments were done, and it appears that generating hundreds of 3KLUT CPUs with caches takes something like 12 seconds, which is a ridiculous time compared to the time required to simulate or synthesize this kind of design.

## 1.5 How SpinalHDL came to be

Between December 2014 and April 2016, it was as a personal hobby project. But since April 2016 one person is working full time on it. Some people are also regularly contributing to the project.

## 1.6 Why develop a new language when there is VHDL/Verilog/SystemVerilog

This page is dedicated to this topic.

## 1.7 How to use an unreleased version of SpinalHDL (but committed on git)

For instance, if you wanna try the dev branch, do the following in a dummy folder :

```
git clone https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalHDL.git -b dev
cd SpinalHDL
sbt clean publishLocal
```

Then in your project, don't forget to update the SpinalHDL version specified in the build.sbt file, see

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalTemplateSbt/blob/master/build.sbt#L10>.

To know which version you have to set, look in

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalHDL/blob/dev/project/Version.scala#L7>



## 2.1 Communication channels

For bug reporting and feature requests, do not hesitate to emit github issues:

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalHDL/issues>

For questions about the SpinalHDL syntax and live talks, a github channel is available:

<https://gitter.im/SpinalHDL/SpinalHDL>

For questions you can also use the forum StackOverflow with the tag SpinalHDL :

<https://stackoverflow.com/>

A google group is also available. Feel free to post whatever subject you want related to SpinalHDL:

<https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/spinalhdl-hardware-description-language>

## 2.2 Commercial support

If you are interested in a presentation, a workshop or consulting, do not hesitate to contact us by email:

[spinalhdl@gmail.com](mailto:spinalhdl@gmail.com)



## 3.1 Compagnies

QsPin, Belgium

## 3.2 Repositories

J1Sc Stack CPU VexRiscv CPU and SoC



## GETTING STARTED

### 4.1 Getting Started

*SpinalHDL* is a hardware description language written in [Scala](#), a static-type functional language using the Java virtual machine (JVM). In order to start programming with *SpinalHDL*, you must have a JVM as well as the Scala compiler. In the next section, we will explain how to download those tools if you don't have them already.

#### 4.1.1 Requirements / Things to download to get started

Before you download the *SpinalHDL* tools, you need to install:

- A Java JDK, which can be downloaded from [here](#) for instance.
- A Scala 2.11.X distribution, which can be downloaded [here](#) (not required if you use SBT).
- The SBT build tool, which can be downloaded [here](#).

Optionally:

- An IDE (which is not compulsory) we advise you to get [IntelliJ](#) with its scala plugin.
- [Git](#) tool (version control).

#### 4.1.2 How to start programming with *SpinalHDL*

Once you have downloaded all the requirements, there are two ways to get started with *SpinalHDL* programming.

1. *The SBT way* : if you already are familiar with the SBT build system and/or if you don't need an IDE.
2. *The IDE way* : get a project already setup for you in an IDE and start programming right away.

##### The SBT way

We have prepared a ready to go project for you on Github.

- Either clone or [download](#) the “getting started” repository.
- Open a terminal in the root of it and run `sbt run`. When you execute it for the first time, the process could take some time as it will download all the dependencies required to run *SpinalHDL*.

Normally, this command must generate an output file `MyTopLevel.vhd`, which corresponds to the top level *SpinalHDL* code defined in `src/main/scala/MyCode.scala`, which corresponds to the *most simple SpinalHDL example*

From a clean Debian distribution you can type followings commands in the shell. It will install java, scala, sbt, download the base project and generate the corresponding VHDL file. Don't worry if it takes time the first time that you run it.

```
sudo apt-get install openjdk-8-jdk
sudo apt-get install scala
echo "deb https://dl.bintray.com/sbt/debian /" | sudo tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/
↪sbt.list
sudo apt-key adv --keyserver hkp://keyserver.ubuntu.com:80 --recv 642AC823
sudo apt-get update
sudo apt-get install sbt
git clone https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalTemplateSbt.git
cd SpinalBaseProject/
sbt run
ls MyTopLevel.vhd
```

### SBT in a environnement isolated from internet

Basically, SBT use online repositories to download and cache your projects dependancies, this cache is located in your home/.ivy2 folder. The way to setup an internet free environnement is to copy this cache from an internet-full environnement where the cache was already filled once, and copy it on your internet less environnement.

You can get an portable SBT setups there :  
<https://www.scala-sbt.org/download.html>

### The IDE way, with IntelliJ IDEA and its Scala plugin

In addition to the aforementioned *requirements*, you also need to download the IntelliJ IDEA (the free *Community edition* is enough). When you have installed IntelliJ, also check that you have enabled its Scala plugin (*install information* can be found here).

And do the following :

- Either clone or *download* the “getting started” repository.
- In *IntelliJ IDEA*, “import project” with the root of this repository, then choose the *Import project from external model SBT* and be sure to check all boxes.
- In addition, you might need to specify some path like where you installed the JDK to *IntelliJ*.
- In the project (IntelliJ project GUI), right click on `src/main/scala/MyCode/TopLevel.scala` and select “Run MyTopLevel”.

Normally, this must generate the output file `MyTopLevel.vhd` in the project directory which corresponds to the most *simple SpinalHDL example*.

### 4.1.3 A very simple SpinalHDL example

The following code generates an and gate between two one bit inputs.

```
import spinal.core._

class AND_Gate extends Component {

  /**
   * This is the component definition that corresponds to
   * the VHDL entity of the component
   */
  val io = new Bundle {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    val a = in Bool
    val b = in Bool
    val c = out Bool
  }

  // Here we define some asynchronous logic
  io.c := io.a & io.b
}

object AND_Gate {
  // Let's go
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new AND_Gate)
  }
}

```

As you can see, the first line you have to write in SpinalHDL is `import spinal.core._` which indicates that we are using the *Spinal* components in the file.

## Generated code

Once you have successfully compiled your code, the compiler should have emitted the following VHDL code:

```

package pkg_enum is
  ...
end pkg_enum;

package pkg_scala2hdl is
  ...
end pkg_scala2hdl;

library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;
use ieee.numeric_std.all;

library work;
use work.pkg_scala2hdl.all;
use work.all;
use work.pkg_enum.all;

entity AND_Gate is
  port(
    io_a : in std_logic;
    io_b : in std_logic;
    io_c : out std_logic
  );
end AND_Gate;

architecture arch of AND_Gate is

begin
  io_c <= (io_a and io_b);
end arch;

```

### 4.1.4 What to do next?

It's up to you, but why not have a look at what the *types* are in SpinalHDL or discover what primitives the language provides to describe hardware components? You could also have a look at our *examples* to see some samples of what you could do next.

## 4.2 Motivation

Redirection to <https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/presentation/en/workshop/taste.pdf>

## 4.3 Presentation

Redirection to <https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/presentation/en/presentation.pdf>

## 4.4 Scala Guide

---

**Important:** Variables and functions should be defined into `object`, `class`, `function`. You can't define them on the root of a Scala file.

---

### 4.4.1 Basics

#### Types

In Scala, there are 5 major types

Type	Literal	Description
Boolean	true, false	
Int	3, 0x32	32 bits integer
Float	3.14f	32 bits floating point
Double	3.14	64 bits floating point
String	"Hello world"	UTF-16 string

#### Variables

In scala, you can define a variable by using the `var` keyword:

```
var number : Int = 0
number = 6
number += 4
println(number) // 10
```

Scala is able to infer the type automatically. You don't need to specify it if the variable is assigned at declaration:

```
var number = 0 //The type of 'number' is inferred as a Int during the compilation.
```

But, in fact, it's not very common to use `var` in Scala. Instead, constant values defined by `val` are often used:



```
val two    = 2
val three  = 3
val six    = two * three
```

## Functions

For example, if you want to define a function which returns `true` if the sum of its two arguments is bigger than zero, you can do as follows:

```
def sumBiggerThanZero(a: Float, b: Float): Boolean = {
  return (a + b) > 0
}
```

Then, to call this function, you can just write:

```
sumBiggerThanZero(2.3f, 5.4f)
```

You can also specify arguments by name, which is useful if you have many arguments:

```
sumBiggerThanZero(
  a = 2.3f,
  b = 5.4f
)
```

## Return

The `return` keyword is not necessary. In absence of it, Scala takes the last statement of your function as the returned value.

```
def sumBiggerThanZero(a: Float, b: Float): Boolean = {
  (a + b) > 0
}
```

## Return type inference

Scala is able to automatically infer the return type. You don't need to specify it:

```
def sumBiggerThanZero(a: Float, b: Float) = {
  (a + b) > 0
}
```

## Curly braces

Scala function doesn't require to have curly braces if your function contains only one statement:

```
def sumBiggerThanZero(a: Float, b: Float) = (a + b) > 0
```

### Function that returns nothing

If you want a function to return nothing, the return type should be set to `Unit`. It's equivalent to the C/C++ `void`.

```
def printer(): Unit = {  
    println("1234")  
    println("5678")  
}
```

### Arguements default value

You can specify a default value for each arguement of a function:

```
def sumBiggerThanZero(a: Float, b: Float = 0.0f) = {  
    (a + b) > 0  
}
```

### Apply

Functions named `apply` are special because you can call them without having to type their name:

```
class Array(){  
    def apply(index: Int): Int = index + 3  
}  
  
val array = new Array()  
val value = array(4)    //array(4) is interpreted as array.apply(4) and will return 7
```

This concept is also applicable for scala `object` (static)

```
object MajorityVote{  
    def apply(value: Int): Int = ...  
}  
  
val value = MajorityVote(4) // Will call MajorityVote.apply(4)
```

### Object

In scala, there is no `static` keyword. In place of that, there is `object`. Everything defined into an `object` is static.

The following example defines a static function named `pow2` which takes a floating point value as parameter and returns a floating point as well.

```
object MathUtils{  
    def pow2(value: Float): Float = value*value  
}
```

Then you can call it by writing:

```
MathUtils.pow2(42.0f)
```

## Entry point (main)

The entry point of a Scala program (the main function) should be defined inside an object as a function named `main`.

```
object MyTopLevelMain{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    println("Hello world")
  }
}
```

## Class

The class syntax is very similar to Java. Imagine that you want to define a `Color` class which takes as construction parameters three `Float` values (`r,g,b`) :

```
class Color(r: Float, g: Float, b: Float){
  def getGrayLevel(): Float = r * 0.3f + g * 0.4f + b * 0.4f
}
```

Then, to instantiate the class from the previous example and use its `getGrayLevel` function:

```
val blue = new Color(0, 0, 1)
val grayLevelOfBlue = blue.getGrayLevel()
```

Be careful, if you want to access a construction parameter of the class from the outside, this construction parameter should be defined as a `val`:

```
class Color(val r: Float, val g: Float, val b: Float){ ... }
...
val blue = new Color(0, 0, 1)
val redLevelOfBlue = blue.r
```

## Inheritance

As an example, suppose that you want to define two classes, `Rectangle` and `Square`, which extend the class `Shape`:

```
class Shape{
  def getArea(): Float
}

class Square(sideLength: Float) extends Shape {
  override def getArea() = sideLength * sideLength
}

class Rectangle(width: Float, height: Float) extends Shape {
  override def getArea() = width * height
}
```

## Case class

Case class is an alternative way of declaring classes.

```
case class Rectangle(width: Float, height: Float) extends Shape {  
  override def getArea() = width * height  
}
```

Then there are some differences between `case class` and `class` :

- case classes don't need the `new` keyword to be instantiated
- construction parameters are accessible from outside, you don't need to define them as `val`.

In SpinalHDL, this explains the reasoning behind the coding conventions: it's in general recommended to use `case class` instead of `class` in order to have less typing and more coherency.

## Templates / Type parameterization

Imagine you want to design a class which is a queue of a given datatype, in that case you need to provide a type parameter to the class:

```
class Queue[T]() {  
  def push(that: T) : Unit = ...  
  def pop(): T = ...  
}
```

If you want to restrict the `T` type to be a sub class of a given type (for example `Shape`), you can use the `<: Shape` syntax :

```
class Shape() {  
  def getArea(): Float  
}  
class Rectangle() extends Shape { ... }  
  
class Queue[T <: Shape]() {  
  def push(that: T): Unit = ...  
  def pop(): T = ...  
}
```

The same is possible for functions:

```
def doSomething[T <: Shape](shape: T): Something = { shape.getArea() }
```

## 4.4.2 Coding conventions

### Introduction

The coding conventions used in SpinalHDL are the same as the ones documented in the [scala doc](#).

Some additional practical details and cases are explained in next chapters.

## class vs case class

When you define a `Bundle` or a `Component`, have a preference to declare them as case class.

The reasons are:

- It avoids the use of `new` keywords. Never having to use it is better than sometimes under some conditions.
- A case class provides an `clone` function. This is useful in SpinalHDL where there is a need to clone one `Bundle`. For example, when you define a new `Reg` or a new `Stream` of some kind.
- Construction parameters are directly visible from outside.

## [case] class

All classes names should start with a upper case letter

```
class Fifo extends Component {
}

class Counter extends Area {
}

case class Color extends Bundle {
}
```

## companion object

A companion object should start with a upper case letter.

```
object Fifo {
  def apply(that: Stream[Bits]): Stream[Bits] = {...}
}

object MajorityVote {
  def apply(that: Bits): UInt = {...}
}
```

An exception to this rule is when the companion object is used as a function (only `apply` inside), and these `apply` functions don't generate hardware:

```
object log2{
  def apply(value: Int): Int = {...}
}
```

### function

A function should always start with a lower case letter:

```
def sinTable = (0 until sampleCount).map(sampleIndex => {  
    val sinValue = Math.sin(2 * Math.PI * sampleIndex / sampleCount)  
    S((sinValue * ((1 << resolutionWidth) / 2 - 1)).toInt, resolutionWidth bits)  
})  
  
val rom = Mem(SInt(resolutionWidth bit), initialContent = sinTable)
```

### instances

Instances of classes should always start with a lower case letter:

```
val fifo = new Fifo()  
val buffer = Reg(Bits(8 bits))
```

### if / when

Scala `if` and SpinalHDL `when` should normally be written in the following way:

```
if(cond){  
    ...  
} else if(cond){  
  
} else {  
  
}  
  
when(cond){  
  
}.elseWhen(cond){  
  
}.otherwise{  
  
}
```

Exceptions could be:

- It's fine to omit the dot before `otherwise`.
- It's fine to compress a whole `if/when` statements on a single line if it makes the code more readable.

### switch

SpinalHDL `switch` should normally be written in the following way:

```
switch(value){  
    is(key){  
  
    }  
    is(key){  
  
    }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
default{
  }
}
```

It's fine to compress a `is/default` statement on a single line if it makes the code more readable.

## Parameters

Grouping parameters of a component/bundle inside a case class is in general welcome:

- Easier to carry/manipulate to configure the design
- Better maintainability

```
case class RgbConfig(rWidth: Int, gWidth: Int, bWidth: Int){
  def getWidth = rWidth + gWidth + bWidth
}

case class Rgb(c: RgbConfig) extends Bundle {
  val r = UInt(c.rWidth bit)
  val g = UInt(c.gWidth bit)
  val b = UInt(c.bWidth bit)
}
```

But this should not be applied in all cases. For example: in a Fifo, it doesn't make sense to group the `dataType` parameter with the depth of the fifo because, in general, the `dataType` is something related to the design, while the depth is something related to the configuration of the design.

```
class Fifo[T <: Data](dataType: T, depth: Int) extends Component {
}
```

## 4.4.3 Interaction

### Introduction

SpinalHDL is, in fact, not an language, it's regular Scala library. It could seem strange at first glance, but this is a very powerful combination.

You can use the whole Scala world to help you in the description of your hardware via the SpinalHDL library, but to do that properly, it's important to understand how SpinalHDL interacts with Scala.

### How SpinalHDL works behind the API

Basically, when you execute your SpinalHDL hardware description, each time you use an SpinalHDL function, operator, classes, it will build in your PC memory a graph that represents the netlist of your design.

Then, when the elaboration is done (Instantiation of your toplevel Component classes), SpinalHDL will do some passes on the graph that was constructed and, if everything is fine, it will flush it into a VHDL or a Verilog file.

## Everything is a reference

For example, if you define a Scala function which takes a parameter of type `Bits`, when you call it, it will be passed as a reference. As consequence of that, if you assign that argument inside the function, it will assign it as if you would have done it outside the function.

## Hardware types

Hardware data types in SpinalHDL are the combination of two things:

- An instance of a given Scala type
- The configuration of that instance

For example `Bits(8 bits)` is the combination of the Scala type `Bits` and its 8 bits configuration (as construction parameter).

## RGB example

Let's take an `Rgb` bundle class as example :

```
case class Rgb(rWidth: Int, gWidth: Int, bWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val r = UInt(rWidth bits)
  val g = UInt(gWidth bits)
  val b = UInt(bWidth bits)
}
```

It appears that the hardware data type is the combination of the Scala `Rgb` classes and its `rWidth`, `gWidth`, `bWidth` parameterization.

Here is an example of usage:

```
//Define a Rgb signal
val myRgbSignal = Rgb(5, 6, 5)

//Define another Rgb signal of the same data type as the preceding one
val myRgbCloned = cloneOf(myRgbSignal)
```

You can also use functions to define kind of type factory (typedef) :

```
//Define a type factory function
def myRgbTypeDef = Rgb(5, 6, 5)

//Use that type factory to create a Rgb signal
val myRgbFromTypeDef = myRgbTypeDef
```

## Names of signals in the generated RTL

To name signals in the generated RTL, SpinalHDL uses Java reflections to walk through all your component hierarchy, collecting all references stored inside the class attributes and naming them with their attribute name.

This is why, the names of every signal defined inside a function are lost:

```
def myFunction(arg: UInt){
  val temp = arg + 1 //You will not retrieve the `temp` signal in the generated RTL
  return temp
}
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```
val value = myFunction(U"000001") + 42
```

One solution if you want preserve the names of the internal variables in the generated RTL, is to use Area:

```
def myFunction(arg: UInt) new Area {
  val temp = arg + 1 //You will not retrieve the temp signal in the generated RTL
}

val myFunctionCall = myFunction(U"000001") //Will generate `temp` with
↳ `myFunctionCall_temp` as name
val value = myFunctionCall.temp + 42
```

## Scala is for elaboration, SpinalHDL for hardware description

For example, if you write a scala for loop to generate some hardware, it will generate the unrolled result in VHDL/Verilog.

Also, if you want a constant, you should not use SpinalHDL Hardware literals but the scala ones. For example:

```
//This is wrong, because you can't use an hardware Bool as construction parameter,
↳ which will do hierarchy violations.
class SubComponent(activeHigh: Bool) extends Component {
  //...
}

//This is right, you can use all the scala world to parameterize your hardware.
class SubComponent(activeHigh: Boolean) extends Component {
  //...
}
```

## Scala elaboration capabilities (if, for, functional programming)

All the scala syntax can be used to elaborate the hardware, for instance, a scala if statement could be used to enable or disable the generation of hardware:

```
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits))
counter := counter + 1
if(generateAClearWhenHit42){ //Elaboration test, like an if generate in vhdl
  when(counter == 42){      //Hardware test
    counter := 0
  }
}
```

The same is true for Scala for loops:

```
val value = Reg(Bits(8 bits))
when(something){
  //Set all bits of value by using a scala for loop (evaluated during the hardware
  ↳ elaboration)
  for(idx <- 0 to 7){
    value(idx) := True
  }
}
```

Also, all the fonctionnal programming stuff of SpinalHDL can be used:

```

val values = Vec(Bits(8 bits),4)

val valuesAre42    = vecOfBits.map(_ === 42)
val valuesAreAll42 = valuesAre42.reduce(_ && _)

val valuesAreEqualsToTheirIndex = vecOfBits.zipWithIndex.map{case (value, i) => value_
  ↳ === i}

```

## 4.4.4 Scala guide

### Introduction

Scala is a very capable programming language that was influenced by a set of languages, but often, this set of languages doesn't cross the ones that people use. That doesn't help the understanding of concepts and design choices behind Scala.

The following chapters will present Scala, and try to provide enough information about it to be comfortable with SpinalHDL.

## 4.5 Help for VHDL people

### 4.5.1 VHDL comparison

#### Introduction

This page will show the main differences between VHDL and SpinalHDL. Things will not be explained in depth.

#### Process

Processes have no senses when you define RTL, and worst than that, they are very annoying and force you to split your code and duplicate things.

To produce the following RTL:



You will have to write the following VHDL:

```

signal mySignal : std_logic;
signal myRegister : std_logic_vector(3 downto 0);
signal myRegisterWithReset : std_logic_vector(3 downto 0);
begin
  process(cond)
  begin
    mySignal <= '0';

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    if cond = '1' then
        mySignal <= '1';
    end if;
end process;

process(clk)
begin
    if rising_edge(clk) then
        if cond = '1' then
            myRegister <= myRegister + 1;
        end if;
    end if;
end process;

process(clk,reset)
begin
    if reset = '1' then
        myRegisterWithReset <= (others => '0');
    elsif rising_edge(clk) then
        if cond = '1' then
            myRegisterWithReset <= myRegisterWithReset + 1;
        end if;
    end if;
end process;

```

While in SpinalHDL, it's:

```

val mySignal = Bool
val myRegister = Reg(UInt(4 bits))
val myRegisterWithReset = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(0)

mySignal := False
when(cond) {
    mySignal := True
    myRegister := myRegister + 1
    myRegisterWithReset := myRegisterWithReset + 1
}

```

### Implicit vs explicit definitions

In VHDL, when you declare a signal, you don't specify if this is a combinatorial signal or a register. Where and how you assign to it decides whether it is combinatorial or registered.

In SpinalHDL these kinds of things are explicit. Registers are defined as registers directly in their declaration.

## Clock domains

In VHDL, every time you want to define a bunch of registers, you need to carry the clock and the reset wire to them. In addition, you have to hardcode everywhere how those clock and reset signals should be used (clock edge, reset polarity, reset nature (async, sync)).

In SpinalHDL you can define a ClockDomain, and then define the area of your hardware that uses it.

For example:

```
val coreClockDomain = ClockDomain(  
  clock = io.coreClk,  
  reset = io.coreReset,  
  config = ClockDomainConfig(  
    clockEdge = RISING,  
    resetKind = ASYNC,  
    resetActiveLevel = HIGH  
  )  
)  
val coreArea = new ClockingArea(coreClockDomain) {  
  val myCoreClockedRegister = Reg(UInt(4 bit))  
  // ...  
  // coreClockDomain will also be applied to all sub components instantiated in the  
  Area  
  // ...  
}
```

## Component's internal organization

In VHDL, you have the block features that allow you to define sub areas of logic inside your component. But in fact, nobody uses them, because most people don't know about them, and also because all signals defined inside them are not readable from the outside.

In SpinalHDL you have an Area feature that does it correctly:

```
val timeout = new Area {  
  val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init(0)  
  val overflow = False  
  when(counter /= 100){  
    counter := counter + 1  
  } otherwise {  
    overflow := True  
  }  
}  
  
val core = new Area {  
  when(timeout.overflow){  
    timeout.counter := 0  
  }  
}
```

## Safety

In VHDL as in SpinalHDL, it's easy to write combinatorial loops, or to infer a latch by forgetting to drive a signal in paths of a process.

Then, to detect those issues, you can use some lint tools that will analyse your VHDL, but those tools aren't free. In SpinalHDL the lint process is integrated inside the compiler, and it won't generate the RTL code until everything is fine. It also checks clock domain crossing.

## Functions and procedures

Function and procedures are not used very often in VHDL, probably because they are very limited:

- You can only define a chunk of combinatorial hardware, or only a chunk of registers (if you call the function/procedure inside a clocked process).
- You can't define a process inside them.
- You can't instantiate a component inside them.
- The scope of what you can read/write inside them are limited.

In spinalHDL, all those limitation are removed.

An example that mixes combinatorial logic and a register in a single function:

```
def simpleAluPipeline(op: Bits, a: UInt, b: UInt): UInt = {
  val result = UInt(8 bits)

  switch(op){
    is(0){result := a + b}
    is(1){result := a - b}
    is(2){result := a * b}
  }

  return RegNext(result)
}
```

An example with the queue function inside the Stream Bundle (handshake). This function instantiates a FIFO component:

```
class Stream[T <: Data](dataType: T) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave with
  DataCarrier[T] {
  val valid = Bool
  val ready = Bool
  val payload = cloneOf(dataType)

  def queue(size: Int): Stream[T] = {
    val fifo = new StreamFifo(dataType, size)
    fifo.io.push <> this
    fifo.io.pop
  }
}
```

An example where a function assigns a signal defined outside itself:

```
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init(0)
counter := counter + 1

def clear() : Unit = {
  counter := 0
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

}

when(counter > 42){
  clear()
}

```

## Buses and Interfaces

VHDL is very boring when it comes to buses and interfaces. You have two options:

- 1) Define buses and interfaces wire by wire, each time and everywhere:

```

PADDR   : in unsigned(addressWidth-1 downto 0);
PSEL    : in std_logic
PENABLE : in std_logic;
PREADY  : out std_logic;
PWRITE  : in std_logic;
PWDATA  : in std_logic_vector(dataWidth-1 downto 0);
PRDATA  : out std_logic_vector(dataWidth-1 downto 0);

```

- 2) Use records but lose parameterization (statically fixed in package), and you have to define one for each directions:

```

P_m : in APB_M;
P_s : out APB_S;

```

SpinalHDL has very strong support for bus and interface declarations with limitless parameterizations:

```

val P = slave(Apb3(addressWidth, dataWidth))

```

You can also use object oriented programming to define configuration objects:

```

val coreConfig = CoreConfig(
  pcWidth = 32,
  addrWidth = 32,
  startAddress = 0x00000000,
  regFileReadyKind = sync,
  branchPrediction = dynamic,
  bypassExecute0 = true,
  bypassExecute1 = true,
  bypassWriteBack = true,
  bypassWriteBackBuffer = true,
  collapseBubble = false,
  fastFetchCmdPcCalculation = true,
  dynamicBranchPredictorCacheSizeLog2 = 7
)

//The CPU has a system of plugins which allows adding new features into the core.
//Those extensions are not directly implemented into the core, but are kind of an
↳ additive logic patch defined in a separated area.
coreConfig.add(new MulExtension)
coreConfig.add(new DivExtension)
coreConfig.add(new BarrelShifterFullExtension)

val iCacheConfig = InstructionCacheConfig(
  cacheSize = 4096,

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

bytePerLine = 32,
wayCount = 1, //Can only be one for the moment
wrappedMemAccess = true,
addressWidth = 32,
cpuDataWidth = 32,
memDataWidth = 32
)

new RiscvCoreAxi4(
  coreConfig = coreConfig,
  iCacheConfig = iCacheConfig,
  dCacheConfig = null,
  debug = debug,
  interruptCount = interruptCount
)

```

## Signal declaration

VHDL forces you to define all signals on the top of your architecture, which is annoying.

```

..
.. (many signal declarations)
..
signal a : std_logic;
..
.. (many signal declarations)
..
begin
..
.. (many logic definitions)
..
a <= x & y
..
.. (many logic definitions)
..

```

SpinalHDL is flexible when it comes to signal declarations.

```

val a = Bool
a := x & y

```

It also allows you to define and assign signals in a single line.

```

val a = x & y

```

## Component instantiation

VHDL is very verbose about this as you have to redefine all signals of your sub component entity, and then bind them one by one when you instantiate your component.

```
divider_cmd_valid : in std_logic;
divider_cmd_ready : out std_logic;
divider_cmd_numerator : in unsigned(31 downto 0);
divider_cmd_denominator : in unsigned(31 downto 0);
divider_rsp_valid : out std_logic;
divider_rsp_ready : in std_logic;
divider_rsp_quotient : out unsigned(31 downto 0);
divider_rsp_remainder : out unsigned(31 downto 0);

divider : entity work.UnsignedDivider
  port map (
    clk          => clk,
    reset        => reset,
    cmd_valid     => divider_cmd_valid,
    cmd_ready    => divider_cmd_ready,
    cmd_numerator => divider_cmd_numerator,
    cmd_denominator => divider_cmd_denominator,
    rsp_valid     => divider_rsp_valid,
    rsp_ready    => divider_rsp_ready,
    rsp_quotient  => divider_rsp_quotient,
    rsp_remainder => divider_rsp_remainder
  );
```

SpinalHDL removes that, and allows you to access the IO of sub components in an object oriented way.

```
val divider = new UnsignedDivider()

//And then if you want to access IO signals of that divider:
divider.io.cmd.valid := True
divider.io.cmd.numerator := 42
```

## Casting

There are two annoying casting methods in VHDL:

- boolean <> std\_logic (ex: To assign a signal using a condition such as mySignal <= myValue < 10 is not legal)
- unsigned <> integer (ex: To access an array)

SpinalHDL removes these casts by unifying things.

boolean/std\_logic:

```
val value = UInt(8 bits)
val valueBiggerThanTwo = Bool
valueBiggerThanTwo := value > 2 //value > 2 return a Bool
```

unsigned/integer:

```
val array = Vec(UInt(4 bits),8)
val sel = UInt(3 bits)
val arraySel = array(sel) //Arrays are indexed directly by using UInt
```



## Resizing

The fact that VHDL is strict about bit size is probably a good thing.

```
my8BitsSignal <= resize(my4BitsSignal,8);
```

In SpinalHDL you have two ways to do the same:

```
//The traditional way
my8BitsSignal := my4BitsSignal.resize(8)

//The smart way
my8BitsSignal := my4BitsSignal.resized
```

## Parameterization

VHDL prior to the 2008 revision has many issues with generics. For example, you can't parameterize records, you can't parameterize arrays in the entity, and you can't have types parameters.

Then VHDL 2008 came and fixed those issues. But RTL tool support for VHDL 2008 is really weak depending the vendor.

SpinalHDL has full support of generics integrated natively in its compiler, and it doesn't rely on the VHDL one.

Here is an example of parameterized data structures:

```
val colorStream = Stream(Color(5, 6, 5))
val colorFifo   = StreamFifo(Color(5, 6, 5), depth = 128)
colorFifo.io.push <> colorStream
```

Here is an example of a parameterized component:

```
class Arbiter[T <: Data](payloadType: T, portCount: Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val sources = Vec(slave(Stream(payloadType)), portCount)
    val sink = master(Stream(payloadType))
  }
  //...
}
```

## Meta hardware description

VHDL has kind of a closed syntax. You can't add abstraction layers on top of it.

SpinalHDL, because it's built on top of Scala, is very flexible, and allows you to define new abstraction layers very easily.

Some examples of that are the *FSM* tool, the *BusSlaveFactory* tool, and also the *JTAG* tool.

## 4.5.2 VHDL equivalences

### Entity and architecture

In SpinalHDL, a VHDL entity and architecture are both defined inside a `Component`.

Here is an example of a component which has 3 inputs (a,b,c) and an output (result). This component also has an offset construction parameter (like a VHDL generic)

```
case class MyComponent(offset: Int) extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle{  
    val a,b,c = in UInt(8 bits)  
    val result = out UInt(8 bits)  
  }  
  io.result := a + b + c + offset  
}
```

Then to instantiate that component, you don't need to bind it:

```
case class TopLevel extends Component{  
  ...  
  val mySubComponent = MyComponent(offset = 5)  
  
  ...  
  
  mySubComponent.io.a := 1  
  mySubComponent.io.b := 2  
  mySubComponent.io.c := 3  
  ??? := mySubComponent.io.result  
  
  ...  
}
```

### Data types

SpinalHDL data types are similar to the VHDL ones:

VHDL	SpinalHDL
std_logic	Bool
std_logic_vector	Bits
unsigned	UInt
signed	SInt

While for defining an 8 bit unsigned in VHDL you have to give the range of bits `unsigned(7 downto 0)`, in SpinalHDL you simply supply the number of bits `UInt(8 bits)`.

VHDL	SpinalHDL
records	Bundle
array	Vec
enum	SpinalEnum

Here is an example of the SpinalHDL Bundle definition. `channelWidth` is a construction parameter, like VHDL generics, but for data structures:

```
case class RGB(channelWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val r,g,b = UInt(channelWidth bits)
}
```

Then for example, to instantiate a Bundle, you need to write `val myColor = RGB(channelWidth=8)`.

## Signal

Here is an example about signal instantiations:

```
case class MyComponent(offset: Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle{
    val a,b,c = UInt(8 bits)
    val result = UInt(8 bits)
  }
  val ab = UInt(8 bits)
  ab := a + b

  val abc = ab + c           //You can define a signal directly with its value
  io.result := abc + offset
}
```

## Assignements

In SpinalHDL, the `:=` assignment operator is equivalent to the VHDL signal assignment (`<=`):

```
val myUInt = UInt(8 bits)
myUInt := 6
```

Conditional assignments are done like in VHDL by using `if`/`case` statements:

```
val clear = Bool
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits))

when(clear){
  counter := 0
}.elsewhen(counter === 76){
  counter := 79
}.otherwise{
  counter(7) := ! counter(7)
}

switch(counter){
  is(42){
    counter := 65
  }
  default{
    counter := counter + 1
  }
}
```

## Literals

Literals are a little bit different than in VHDL:

```
val myBool = Bool
myBool := False
myBool := True
myBool := Bool(4 > 7)

val myUInt = UInt(8 bits)
myUInt := "0001_1100"
myUInt := "xEE"
myUInt := 42
myUInt := U(54, 8 bits)
myUInt := ((3 downto 0) -> myBool, default -> true)
when(myUInt === U(myUInt.range -> true)){
  myUInt(3) := False
}
```

## Registers

In SpinalHDL, registers are explicitly specified while in VHDL it's inferred. Here is an example of SpinalHDL registers:

```
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init(0)
counter := counter + 1 //Count up each cycle

//init(0) means that the register should be initialized to zero when a reset occurs
```

## Process blocks

Process blocks are a simulation feature that is unnecessary to design RTL. It's why SpinalHDL doesn't contain any feature analog to process blocks, and you can assign what you want where you want.

```
val cond = Bool
val myCombinatorial = Bool
val myRegister = UInt(8 bits)

myCombinatorial := False
when(cond)
  myCombinatorial := True
  myRegister = myRegister + 1
}
```

## 4.6 Cheatsheets

### 4.6.1 Core

Redirection to [https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/cheatsheet/cheatSheet\\_core\\_oo.pdf](https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/cheatsheet/cheatSheet_core_oo.pdf)

### 4.6.2 Lib

Redirection to [https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/cheatsheet/cheatSheet\\_lib\\_oo.pdf](https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/cheatsheet/cheatSheet_lib_oo.pdf)

### 4.6.3 Symbolic

Redirection to [https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/cheatsheet/cheatSheet\\_symbolic.pdf](https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalDoc/blob/master/cheatsheet/cheatSheet_symbolic.pdf)



## DATA TYPES

### 5.1 Bool

#### 5.1.1 Description

The Bool type corresponds to a boolean value (True or False).

#### 5.1.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare a boolean value is as follows: (everything between [] is optional)

Syntax	Description	Return
Bool[()]	Create a Bool	Bool
True	Create a Bool assigned with true	Bool
False	Create a Bool assigned with false	Bool
Bool(value: Boolean)	Create a Bool assigned with a Scala Boolean(true, false)	Bool

```
val myBool_1 = Bool           // Create a Bool
myBool_1 := False            // := is the assignment operator

val myBool_2 = False          // Equivalent to the code above

val myBool_3 = Bool(5 > 12)    // Use a Scala Boolean to create a Bool
```

#### 5.1.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the Bool type:

## Logic

Operator	Description	Return type
!x	Logical NOT	Bool
x && y x & y	Logical AND	Bool
x    y x   y	Logical OR	Bool
x ^ y	Logical XOR	Bool
x.set[()]	Set x to True	
x.clear[()]	Set x to False	
x.setWhen(cond)	Set x when cond is True	Bool
x.clearWhen(cond)	Clear x when cond is True	Bool

```

val a, b, c = Bool
val res = (!a & b) ^ c    // ((NOT a) AND b) XOR c

val d = False
when(cond){
  d.set()    // equivalent to d := True
}

val e = False
e.setWhen(cond) // equivalent to when(cond){ d := True }

```

## Edge detection

Operator	Description	Return type
x.edge[()]	Return True when x changes state	Bool
x.edge(initAt: Bool)	Same as x.edge but with a reset value	Bool
x.rise[()]	Return True when x was low at the last cycle and is now high	Bool
x.rise(initAt: Bool)	Same as x.rise but with a reset value	Bool
x.fall[()]	Return True when x was high at the last cycle and is now low	Bool
x.fall(initAt: Bool)	Same as x.fall but with a reset value	Bool
x.edges[()]	Return a bundle (rise, fall, toggle)	BoolEdges
x.edges(initAt: Bool)	Same as x.edges but with a reset value	BoolEdges

```

when(myBool_1.rise(False)){
  // do something when a rising edge is detected
}

val edgeBundle = myBool_2.edges(False)
when(edgeBundle.rise){
  // do something when a rising edge is detected
}
when(edgeBundle.fall){

```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

    // do something when a falling edge is detected
}
when(edgeBundle.toggle){
    // do something at each edge
}

```

## Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>x === y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x !== y</code>	Inequality	Bool

```

when(myBool){ // Equivalent to when(myBool === True)
    // do something when myBool is True
}

when(!myBool){ // Equivalent to when(myBool === False)
    // do something when myBool is False
}

```

## Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.asBits</code>	Binary cast to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x.asUInt</code>	Binary cast to UInt	UInt(w(x) bits)
<code>x.asSInt</code>	Binary cast to SInt	SInt(w(x) bits)
<code>x.asUInt(bitCount)</code>	Binary cast to UInt and resize	UInt(bitCount bits)
<code>x.asBits(bitCount)</code>	Binary cast to Bits and resize	Bits(bitCount bits)

```

// Add the carry to an SInt value
val carry = Bool
val res = mySInt + carry.asSInt

```

## Misc

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x ## y</code>	Concatenate, x->high, y->low	Bits(w(x) + w(y) bits)

```

val a, b, c = Bool

// Concatenation of three Bool into a Bits
val myBits = a ## b ## c

```

## 5.2 Bits

### 5.2.1 Description

The Bits type corresponds to a vector of bits that does not convey any arithmetic meaning.

### 5.2.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare a bit vector is as follows: (everything between [] is optional)

Syntax	Description	Return
Bits []	Create a BitVector, bits count is inferred	Bits
Bits(x bits)	Create a BitVector with x bits	Bits
B(value: Int[, x bits]) B(value: BigInt[, x bits])	Create a BitVector with x bits assigned with 'value'	Bits
B"[size]base]value"	Create a BitVector assigned with 'value' (Base: 'h', 'd', 'o', 'b')	Bits
B([x bits,] element, ...)	Create a BitVector assigned with the value specified by elements	Bits

```
// Declaration
val myBits = Bits()           // the size is inferred
val myBits1 = Bits(32 bits)
val myBits2 = B(25, 8 bits)
val myBits3 = B"8'xFF"       // Base could be x,h (base 16)
                               // d (base 10)
                               // o (base 8)
                               // b (base 2)
val myBits4 = B"1001_0011"   // _ can be used for readability

// Element
val myBits5 = B(8 bits, default -> True) // "11111111"
val myBits6 = B(8 bits, (7 downto 5) -> B"101", 4 -> true, 3 -> True, default ->
↳false ) // "10111000"
val myBits7 = Bits(8 bits)
myBits7 := (7 -> true, default -> false) // "10000000" (For assignement purposes, you
↳can omit the B)
```

### 5.2.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the Bits type

## Logic

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>~x</code>	Bitwise NOT	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x &amp; y</code>	Bitwise AND	Bits(w(xy) bits)
<code>x   y</code>	Bitwise OR	Bits(w(xy) bits)
<code>x ^ y</code>	Bitwise XOR	Bits(w(xy) bits)
<code>x.xorR</code>	XOR all bits of x	Bool
<code>x.orR</code>	OR all bits of x	Bool
<code>x.andR</code>	AND all bits of x	Bool
<code>x &gt;&gt; y</code>	Logical shift right, y: Int	Bits(w(x) - y bits)
<code>x &gt;&gt; y</code>	Logical shift right, y: UInt	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x &lt;&lt; y</code>	Logical shift left, y: Int	Bits(w(x) + y bits)
<code>x &lt;&lt; y</code>	Logical shift left, y: UInt	Bits(w(x) + max(y) bits)
<code>x &gt;&gt;&gt; y</code>	Logical shift right, y: Int/UInt	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x &lt;&lt;&lt; y</code>	Logical shift left, y: Int/UInt	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x.rotateLeft(y)</code>	Logical left rotation, y: UInt/Int	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x.rotateRight(y)</code>	Logical right rotation, y: UInt/Int	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x.clearAll[()]</code>	Clear all bits	
<code>x.setAll[()]</code>	Set all bits	
<code>x.setAllTo(value: Boolean)</code>	Set all bits to the given Boolean value	
<code>x.setAllTo(value: Bool)</code>	Set all bits to the given Bool value	

```
// Bitwise operator
val a, b, c = Bits(32 bits)
c := ~(a & b) // Inverse(a AND b)

val all_1 = a.andR // Check that all bits are equal to 1

// Logical shift
val bits_10bits = bits_8bits << 2 // shift left (results in 10 bits)
val shift_8bits = bits_8bits |<< 2 // shift left (results in 8 bits)

// Logical rotation
val myBits = bits_8bits.rotateLeft(3) // left bit rotation

// Set/clear
val a = B"8'x42"
when(cond){
  a.setAll() // set all bits to True when cond is True
}
```

## Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>x === y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x !== y</code>	Inequality	Bool

```
when(myBits === 3){
}

when(myBits_32 !== B"32'x44332211"){
}
```

## Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
x.asBits	Binary cast to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)
x.asUInt	Binary cast to UInt	UInt(w(x) bits)
x.asSInt	Binary cast to SInt	SInt(w(x) bits)
x.asBools	Cast to an array of Bools	Vec(Bool, w(x))
B(x: T)	Cast Data to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)

To cast a Bool, UInt or a SInt into a Bits, you can use B(something)

```
// cast a Bits to SInt
val mySInt = myBits.asSInt

// create a Vector of bool
val myVec = myBits.asBools

// Cast a SInt to Bits
val myBits = B(mySInt)
```

## Bit extraction

Operator	Description	Return
x(y)	Readbit, y: Int/UInt	Bool
x(hi,lo)	Read bitfield, hi: Int, lo: Int	Bits(hi-lo+1 bits)
x(offset,width bits)	Read bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	Bits(width bits)
x(range)	Read a range of bit. Ex : myBits(4 downto 2)	Bits(range bits)
x(y) := z	Assign bits, y: Int/UInt	Bool
x(offset, width bits) := z	Assign bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	Bits(width bits)
x(range) := z	Assign a range of bit. Ex : myBits(4 downto 2) := B"010"	Bits(range bits)

```
// get the element at the index 4
val myBool = myBits(4)

// assign
myBits(1) := True

// Range
val myBits_8bits = myBits_16bits(7 downto 0)
val myBits_7bits = myBits_16bits(0 to 6)
val myBits_6bits = myBits_16bits(0 until 6)

myBits_8bits(3 downto 0) := myBits_4bits
```

## Misc

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.getWidth</code>	Return bitcount	Int
<code>x.range</code>	Return the range ( <code>x.high</code> downto 0)	Range
<code>x.high</code>	Return the upper bound of the type <code>x</code>	Int
<code>x.msb</code>	Return the most significant bit	Bool
<code>x.lsb</code>	Return the least significant bit	Bool
<code>x ## y</code>	Concatenate, <code>x</code> ->high, <code>y</code> ->low	Bits( <code>w(x)</code> + <code>w(y)</code> bits)
<code>x.subdivideIn(y slices)</code>	Subdivide <code>x</code> in <code>y</code> slices, <code>y</code> : Int	Vec(Bits, <code>y</code> )
<code>x.subdivideIn(y bits)</code>	Subdivide <code>x</code> in multiple slices of <code>y</code> bits, <code>y</code> : Int	Vec(Bits, <code>w(x)/y</code> )
<code>x.resize(y)</code>	Return a resized copy of <code>x</code> , if enlarged, it is filled with zero, <code>y</code> : Int	Bits( <code>y</code> bits)
<code>x.resized</code>	Return a version of <code>x</code> which is allowed to be automatically resized were needed	Bits( <code>w(x)</code> bits)
<code>x.resizeLeft(x)</code>	Resize by keeping MSB at the same place, <code>x</code> :Int	Bits( <code>x</code> bits)

```
println(myBits_32bits.getWidth) // 32

myBool := myBits.lsb // equivalent to myBits(0)

// concatenation
myBits_24bits := bits_8bits_1 ## bits_8bits_2 ## bits_8bits_3

// Subdivide
val sel = UInt(2 bits)
val myBitsWord = myBits_128bits.subdivideIn(32 bits)(sel)
  // sel = 0 => myBitsWord = myBits_128bits(127 downto 96)
  // sel = 1 => myBitsWord = myBits_128bits( 95 downto 64)
  // sel = 2 => myBitsWord = myBits_128bits( 63 downto 32)
  // sel = 3 => myBitsWord = myBits_128bits( 31 downto  0)

// if you want to access in a reverse order you can do
val myVector  = myBits_128bits.subdivideIn(32 bits).reverse
val myBitsWord = myVector(sel)

// Resize
myBits_32bits := B"32'x112233344"
myBits_8bits  := myBits_32bits.resized           // automatic resize (myBits_8bits = 0x44)
myBits_8bits  := myBits_32bits.resize(8)         // resize to 8 bits (myBits_8bits = 0x44)
myBits_8bits  := myBits_32bits.resizeLeft(8)     // resize to 8 bits (myBits_8bits = 0x11)
```

## 5.3 UInt/SInt

### 5.3.1 Description

The UInt/SInt type corresponds to a vector of bits that can be used for signed/unsigned integer arithmetic.

### 5.3.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare an integer is as follows: (everything between [] is optional)

Syntax	Description	Return
UInt() SInt()	Create an unsigned/signed integer, bits count is inferred	UInt SInt
UInt(x bits) SInt(x bits)	Create an unsigned/signed integer with x bits	UInt SInt
U(value: Int[,x bits]) U(value: BigInt[,x bits]) S(value: Int[,x bits]) S(value: BigInt[,x bits])	Create an unsigned/signed integer assigned with 'value'	UInt SInt
U"[size]base]value" S"[size]base]value"	Create an unsigned/signed integer assigned with 'value' (Base : 'h', 'd', 'o', 'b')	UInt SInt
U([x bits,] element, ...) S([x bits,] element, ...)	Create an unsigned integer assigned with the value specified by elements	UInt SInt

```

val myUInt = UInt(8 bits)
myUInt := U(2,8 bits)
myUInt := U(2)
myUInt := U"0000_0101" // Base per default is binary => 5
myUInt := U"h1A"       // Base could be x (base 16)
                        //                h (base 16)
                        //                d (base 10)
                        //                o (base 8)
                        //                b (base 2)

myUInt := U"8'h1A"
myUInt := 2           // You can use scala Int as literal value

val myBool := myUInt === U(7 -> true, (6 downto 0) -> false)
val myBool := myUInt === U(myUInt.range -> true)

// For assignement purposes, you can omit the U/S, which also allow the use of the
↳ [default -> ???] feature

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

myUInt := (default -> true)           //Assign myUInt with "11111111"
myUInt := (myUInt.range -> true)      //Assign myUInt with "11111111"
myUInt := (7 -> true, default -> false) //Assign myUInt with "10000000"
myUInt := ((4 downto 1) -> true, default -> false) //Assign myUInt with "00011110"

```

### 5.3.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the UInt and SInt type

#### Logic

Operator	Description	Return type
$x \wedge y$	Logical XOR	Bool
$\sim x$	Bitwise NOT	T(w(x) bits)
$x \& y$	Bitwise AND	T(max(w(xy) bits)
$x   y$	Bitwise OR	T(max(w(xy) bits)
$x \wedge y$	Bitwise XOR	T(max(w(xy) bits)
x.xorR	XOR all bits of x	Bool
x.orR	OR all bits of x	Bool
x.andR	AND all bits of x	Bool
$x \gg y$	Arithmetic shift right, y : Int	T(w(x) - y bits)
$x \gg y$	Arithmetic shift right, y : UInt	T(w(x) bits)
$x \ll y$	Arithmetic shift left, y : Int	T(w(x) + y bits)
$x \ll y$	Arithmetic shift left, y : UInt	T(w(x) + max(y) bits)
$x \ggg y$	Logical shift right, y : Int/UInt	T(w(x) bits)
$x \lll y$	Logical shift left, y : Int/UInt	T(w(x) bits)
x.rotateLeft(y)	Logical left rotation, y : UInt/Int	T(w(x) bits)
x.rotateRight(y)	Logical right rotation, y : UInt/Int	T(w(x) bits)
x.clearAll[()]	Clear all bits	
x.setAll[()]	Set all bits	
x.setAllTo(value : Boolean)	Set all bits to the given Boolean value	
x.setAllTo(value : Bool)	Set all bits to the given Bool value	

```

// Bitwise operator
val a, b, c = SInt(32 bits)
c := ~(a & b) // Inverse(a AND b)

val all_1 = a.andR // Check that all bits are equal to 1

// Logical shift
val uint_10bits = uint_8bits << 2 // shift left (resulting in 10 bits)
val shift_8bits = uint_8bits |<< 2 // shift left (resulting in 8 bits)

// Logical rotation
val myBits = uint_8bits.rotateLeft(3) // left bit rotation

// Set/clear
val a = B"8'x42"
when(cond){
  a.setAll() // set all bits to True when cond is True
}

```

## Arithmetic

Operator	Description	Return
$x + y$	Addition	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)), \text{bits})$
$x +^{\wedge} y$	Addition with carry	$T(\max(w(x), w(y) + 1), \text{bits})$
$x +  y$	addition by sat carry bit	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)), \text{bits})$
$x - y$	Subtraction	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)), \text{bits})$
$x -^{\wedge} y$	Subtraction with carry	$T(\max(w(x), w(y) + 1), \text{bits})$
$x -  y$	Subtraction by sat carry bit	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)), \text{bits})$
$x * y$	Multiplication	$T(w(x) + w(y), \text{bits})$
$x / y$	Division	$T(w(x), \text{bits})$
$x \% y$	Modulo	$T(w(x), \text{bits})$

```
// Addition
val res = mySInt_1 + mySInt_2
```

## Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
$x === y$	Equality	Bool
$x \neq y$	Inequality	Bool
$x > y$	Greater than	Bool
$x \geq y$	Greater than or equal	Bool
$x < y$	Less than	Bool
$x \leq y$	Less than or equal	Bool

```
// Comparaison between two SInt
myBool := mySInt_1 > mySInt_2

// Comparaison between a UInt and a literal
myBool := myUInt_8bits >= U(3, 8 bits)

when(myUInt_8bits === 3){
}
```

## Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
$x.\text{asBits}$	Binary cast to Bits	$\text{Bits}(w(x), \text{bits})$
$x.\text{asUInt}$	Binary cast to UInt	$\text{UInt}(w(x), \text{bits})$
$x.\text{asSInt}$	Binary cast to SInt	$\text{SInt}(w(x), \text{bits})$
$x.\text{asBools}$	Cast into a array of Bool	$\text{Vec}(\text{Bool}, w(x))$
$S(x: T)$	Cast a Data into a SInt	$\text{SInt}(w(x), \text{bits})$
$U(x: T)$	Cast a Data into an UInt	$\text{UInt}(w(x), \text{bits})$
$x.\text{intoSInt}$	convert to SInt expand signbit	$\text{SInt}(w(x) + 1, \text{bits})$

To cast a Bool, a Bits or a SInt into a UInt, you can use `U(something)`. To cast things into a SInt, you can use `S(something)`



```
// cast a SInt to Bits
val myBits = mySInt.asBits

// create a Vector of bool
val myVec = myUInt.asBools

// Cast a Bits to SInt
val mySInt = S(myBits)
```

### Bit extraction

Operator	Description	Return
x(y)	Readbit, y : Int/UInt	Bool
x(offset, width)	Read bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	T(width bits)
x(range)	Read a range of bits. Ex : myBits(4 downto 2)	T(range bits)
x(y) := z	Assign bits, y : Int/UInt	Bool
x(offset, width) := z	Assign bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	T(width bits)
x(range) := z	Assign a range of bit. Ex : myBits(4 downto 2) := U"010"	T(range bits)

```
// get the bit at index 4
val myBool = myUInt(4)

// assign bit 1 to True
mySInt(1) := True

// Range
val myUInt_8bits = myUInt_16bits(7 downto 0)
val myUInt_7bits = myUInt_16bits(0 to 6)
val myUInt_6bits = myUInt_16bits(0 until 6)

mySInt_8bits(3 downto 0) := mySInt_4bits
```

## Misc

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.getWidth</code>	Return bitcount	Int
<code>x.msb</code>	Return the most significant bit	Bool
<code>x.lsb</code>	Return the least significant bit	Bool
<code>x.range</code>	Return the range (x.high downto 0)	Range
<code>x.high</code>	Return the upper bound of the type x	Int
<code>x ## y</code>	Concatenate, x->high, y->low	Bits(w(x) + w(y) bits)
<code>x @@ y</code>	Concatenate x:T with y:Bool/SInt/UInt	T(w(x) + w(y) bits)
<code>x.subdivideIn(y slices)</code>	Subdivide x into y slices, y: Int	Vec(T, y)
<code>x.subdivideIn(y bits)</code>	Subdivide x into multiple slices of y bits, y: Int	Vec(T, w(x)/y)
<code>x.resize(y)</code>	Return a resized copy of x, if enlarged, it is filled with zero for UInt or filled with the sign for SInt, y: Int	T(y bits)
<code>x.resized</code>	Return a version of x which is allowed to be automatically resized where needed	T(w(x) bits)
<code>myUInt.twoComplement(en: Bool)</code>	Use the two's complement to transform an UInt into an SInt	SInt(w(myUInt) + 1, bits)
<code>mySInt.abs</code>	Return the absolute value of the UInt value	UInt(w(mySInt), bits)
<code>mySInt.abs(en: Bool)</code>	Return the absolute value of the UInt value when en is True	UInt(w(mySInt), bits)
<code>mySInt.sign</code>	Return most significant bit	Bool
<code>x.expand</code>	Return x with 1 bit expand	T(w(x)+1 bit)
<code>mySInt.absWithSym</code>	Return the absolute value of the UInt value with symmetric, shrink 1 bit	UInt(w(mySInt) - 1, bits)

```

myBool := mySInt.lsb // equivalent to mySInt(0)

// Concatenation
val mySInt = mySInt_1 @@ mySInt_1 @@ myBool
val myBits = mySInt_1 ## mySInt_1 ## myBool

// Subdivide
val sel = UInt(2 bits)
val mySIntWord = mySInt_128bits.subdivideIn(32 bits)(sel)
// sel = 0 => mySIntWord = mySInt_128bits(127 downto 96)
// sel = 1 => mySIntWord = mySInt_128bits( 95 downto 64)
// sel = 2 => mySIntWord = mySInt_128bits( 63 downto 32)
// sel = 3 => mySIntWord = mySInt_128bits( 31 downto  0)

// if you want to access in a reverse order you can do
val myVector  = mySInt_128bits.subdivideIn(32 bits).reverse
val mySIntWord = myVector(sel)

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// Resize
myUInt_32bits := U"32'x112233344"
myUInt_8bits  := myUInt_32bits.resized      // automatic resize (myUInt_8bits = 0x44)
myUInt_8bits  := myUInt_32bits.resize(8)    // resize to 8 bits (myUInt_8bits = 0x44)

// Two's complement
mySInt := myUInt.twoComplement(myBool)

// Absolute value
mySInt_abs := mySInt.abs
```

### 5.3.4 fixPoint operation

For fixed-point, we can divide it into two parts.

- LowerBit Operation(round methods)
- HighBit Operation(saturation operations)

#### Lower Bit operation



About Rounding: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rounding>

SpinalHDL-Name	Wikipedia-Name	API	Matmatic-Alogrithm	re-turn(align=false)	Sup-ported
FLOOR	RoundDown	floor	floor(x)	w(x)-n bits	Yes
FLOOR-TOZERO	RoundToZero	floorToZero	sign*floor(abs(x))	w(x)-n bits	Yes
CEIL	RoundUp	ceil	ceil(x)	w(x)-n+1 bits	Yes
CEILTOINF	RoundToInf	ceilToInf	sign*ceil(abs(x))	w(x)-n+1 bits	Yes
ROUNDUP	RoundHalfUp	roundUp	floor(x+0.5)	w(x)-n+1 bits	Yes
ROUNDDOWN	RoundHalf-Down	roundDown	ceil(x-0.5)	w(x)-n+1 bits	Yes
ROUND-TOZERO	Round-HalfToZero	round-ToZero	sign*ceil(abs(x)-0.5)	w(x)-n+1 bits	Yes
ROUNDTOINF	RoundHalfToInf	roundToInf	sign*floor(abs(x)+0.5)	w(x)-n+1 bits	Yes
ROUNDTO-EVEN	RoundHalfTo-Even	roundTo-Even			No
ROUND-TOODD	Round-HalfToOdd	round-ToOdd			No

#### Note:

the **RoundToEven** **RoundToOdd** are very special ,Used in some big data statistical fields with high accuracy concern,  
SpinalHDL don't support them yet.

You can find **ROUNDUP**, **ROUNDDOWN**, **ROUNDTOZERO**, **ROUNDTOINF**, **ROUNDTOEVEN**, **ROUNDTOODD** are very close, *ROUNDTOINF* is most common. the api of round in different Programming-language may different.

Programing-language	default-RoundType	Example	comments
Matlab	ROUNDTOINF	round(1.5)=2,round(2.5)=3;round(-1.5)=-2,round(-2.5)=-3	round to $\pm$ Infinity
python2	ROUNDTOINF	round(1.5)=2,round(2.5)=3;round(-1.5)=-2,round(-2.5)=-3	round to $\pm$ Infinity
python3	ROUNDTO-EVEN	round(1.5)=round(2.5)=2; round(-1.5)=round(-2.5)=-2	close to Even
Scala.math	ROUNDTOUP	round(1.5)=2,round(2.5)=3;round(-1.5)=-1,round(-2.5)=-2	always to +Infinity
SpinalHDL	ROUNDTOINF	round(1.5)=2,round(2.5)=3;round(-1.5)=-2,round(-2.5)=-3	round to $\pm$ Infinity

**Note:** In SpinalHDL *ROUNDTOINF* is the default RoundType (*round* = *roundToInf*)

```

val A = SInt(16 bit)
val B = A.roundToInf(6 bits) //default 'align = false' with carry, got 11 bit
val B = A.roundToInf(6 bits, align = true) // sat 1 carry bit, got 10 bit
val B = A.floor(6 bits) //return 10 bit
val B = A.floorToZero(6 bits) //return 10 bit
val B = A.ceil(6 bits) //ceil with carry so return 11 bit
val B = A.ceil(6 bits, align = true) //ceil with carry then sat 1 bit return 10 bit
val B = A.ceilToInf(6 bits)
val B = A.roundUp(6 bits)
val B = A.roundDown(6 bits)
val B = A.roundToInf(6 bits)
val B = A.roundToZero(6 bits)
val B = A.round(6 bits) //spinalHDL use roundToInf as default round

val B0 = A.roundToInf(6 bits, align=true) ---+
                                     |--> equal
val B1 = A.roundToInf(6 bits, align=false).sat(1) ---+

```

#### Note:

only *floor* and *floorToZero* without align option, they do not need carry bit.  
other round operation default with carry bit.

#### round Api

API	UInt/SInt	description	Return(align=false)	Return(align=true)
floor	Both		w(x)-n bits	w(x)-n bits
floorToZero	SInt	equal to floor in UInt	w(x)-n bits	w(x)-n bits
ceil	Both		w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits
ceilToInf	SInt	equal to ceil in UInt	w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits
roundUp	Both	simple for HW	w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits
roundDown	Both		w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits
roundToInf	SInt	most Common	w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits
roundToZero	SInt	equal to roundDown in UInt	w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits
round	Both	SpinalHDL chose roundToInf	w(x)-n+1 bits	w(x)-n bits

**Note:**

although *roundToInf* is very common.

but *roundUp* with lowerest cost and good timing, almost no performance lost.

so *roundUp* is very recommended in your work.

**High Bit operation**

function	Operation	Postive-Op	Negative-Op	sup-ported
sat	Satura-tion	when(Top[w-1,w-n].orR) set max-Value	When(Top[w-1,w-n].andR) set minValue	Yes
trim	Discard	N/A	N/A	Yes
symme-try	Symmet-ric	N/A	minValue = -maxValue	Yes

Symmetric is only valid for SInt.

```

val A = SInt(8 bit)
val B = A.sat(3 bits) //return 5 bits with saturated highest 3 bits
val B = A.sat(3) //equal to sat(3 bits)
val B = A.trim(3 bits) //return 5 bits with discard hightest 3 bits
val B = A.trim(3 bits) //return 5 bits with discard hightest 3 bits
val C = A.symmetry //return 8 bits and symmetry as (-128~127 to -127~127)
val C = A.sat(3).symmetry //return 5 bits and symmetry as (-16~15 to -15~15)

```

## fixTo function

two way are provided in UInt/SInt do fixpoint:



fixTo is strongly recommended in your RTL work, you don't need handle carry bit align and bit width calculate manually like Way1.

Factory Fix function with Auto Saturation

fuction	description	Return
fixTo(section,roundType,symmetric)	Factory FixFunction	section.size bits

```
val A = SInt(16 bit)
val B = A.fixTo(10 downto 3) //default RoundType.ROUNDTOINF, sym = false
val B = A.fixTo( 8 downto 0, RoundType.ROUNDUP)
val B = A.fixTo( 9 downto 3, RoundType.CEIL,      sym = false)
val B = A.fixTo(16 downto 1, RoundType.ROUNDTOINF, sym = true )
val B = A.fixTo(10 downto 3, RoundType.FLOOR) //floor 3 bit, sat 5 bit @ highest
val B = A.fixTo(20 downto 3, RoundType.FLOOR) //floor 3 bit, expand 2 bit @ highest
```

## 5.4 SpinalEnum

### 5.4.1 Description

The Enumeration type corresponds to a list of named values.

### 5.4.2 Declaration

The declaration of an enumerated data type is as follows:

```
object Enumeration extends SpinalEnum {
  val element0, element1, ..., elementN = newElement()
}
```

For the example above, the default encoding is used. Native enumeration type is used for VHDL and a binary encoding is used for Verilog.

The enumeration encoding can be forced by defining the enumeration as follows:

```
object Enumeration extends SpinalEnum(defaultEncoding=encodingOfYourChoice) {
  val element0, element1, ..., elementN = newElement()
}
```

**Note:** If you want to define a enumeration as in/out of a given component, you have to do as following :  
in(MyEnum()) out(MyEnum())

### Encoding

The following enumeration encodings are supported :

Encoding	Bit width	Description
native		Use the VHDL enumeration system, this is the default encoding
binary-Sequential	$\log_2 \text{Up}(\text{stateCount})$	Use Bits to store states in declaration order (value from 0 to n-1)
binary-OneHot	state-Count	Use Bits to store state. Each bit corresponds to one state

Custom encoding can be performed in two different ways: static or dynamic.

```
/*
 * Static encoding
 */
object MyEnumStatic extends SpinalEnum{
  val e0, e1, e2, e3 = newElement()
  defaultEncoding = SpinalEnumEncoding("staticEncoding")(
    e0 -> 0,
    e1 -> 2,
    e2 -> 3,
    e3 -> 7)
}

/*
 * Dynamic encoding with the function : _ * 2 + 1
 *   e.g : e0 => 0 * 2 + 1 = 1
 *         e1 => 1 * 2 + 1 = 3
 *         e2 => 2 * 2 + 1 = 5
 *         e3 => 3 * 2 + 1 = 7
 */
val encoding = SpinalEnumEncoding("dynamicEncoding", _ * 2 + 1)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
object MyEnumDynamic extends SpinalEnum(encoding){
  val e0, e1, e2, e3 = newElement()
}
```

## Example

Instantiate a enumerated signal and assign a value to it :

```
object UartCtrlTxState extends SpinalEnum {
  val sIdle, sStart, sData, sParity, sStop = newElement()
}

val stateNext = UartCtrlTxState()
stateNext := UartCtrlTxState.sIdle

//You can also import the enumeration to have the visibility on its elements
import UartCtrlTxState._
stateNext := sIdle
```

## 5.4.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the Enumeration type

### Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>x === y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x !== y</code>	Inequality	Bool

```
import UartCtrlTxState._

val stateNext = UartCtrlTxState()
stateNext := sIdle

when(stateNext === sStart){

}

switch(stateNext){
  is(sIdle){

  }
  is(sStart){

  }
  ...
}
```



## Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
x.asBits	Binary cast to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)
x.asUInt	Binary cast to UInt	UInt(w(x) bits)
x.asSInt	Binary cast to SInt	SInt(w(x) bits)

```
import UartCtrlTxState._

val stateNext = UartCtrlTxState()
myBits := sIdle.asBits
```

## 5.5 Bundle

### 5.5.1 Description

The Bundle is a composite type that defines a group of named signals (of any SpinalHDL basic type) under a single name.

A Bundle can be used to model data structures, buses and interfaces.

### 5.5.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare a bundle is as follows:

```
case class myBundle extends Bundle {
  val bundleItem0 = AnyType
  val bundleItem1 = AnyType
  val bundleItemN = AnyType
}
```

For example, a bundle holding a color could be defined as:

```
case class Color(channelWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val r,g,b = UInt(channelWidth bits)
}
```

You can find an APB3 definition example [there](#)

### 5.5.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the Bundle type

## Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>x == y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x != y</code>	Inequality	Bool

```
val color1 = Color(8)
color1.r := 0
color1.g := 0
color1.b := 0

val color2 = Color(8)
color2.r := 0
color2.g := 0
color2.b := 0

myBool := color1 == color2
```

## Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.asBits</code>	Binary cast to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)

```
val color1 = Color(8)
val myBits := color1.asBits
```

### 5.5.4 IO Element direction

When you define an Bundle inside the IO definition of your component, you need to specify its direction.

#### in/out

If all elements of your bundle go in the same direction you can use `in(MyBundle())` or `out(MyBundle())`.

For example :

```
val io = new Bundle{
  val input  = in (Color(8))
  val output = out(Color(8))
}
```

## master/slave

If your interface obeys to a master/slave topology, you can use the `IMasterSlave` trait. Then you have to implement the function `def asMaster(): Unit` to set the direction of each elements from an master perspective. Then you can use the `master(MyBundle())` and `slave(MyBundle())` syntax in the IO definition.

For example :

```
case class HandShake(payloadWidth: Int) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
  val valid  = Bool
  val ready  = Bool
  val payload = Bits(payloadWidth bits)

  //You have to implement this asMaster function.
  //This function should set the direction of each signals from an master point of view
  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    out(valid,payload)
    in(ready)
  }
}

val io = new Bundle{
  val input  = slave(HandShake(8))
  val output = master(HandShake(8))
}
```

## 5.6 Vec

### 5.6.1 Description

A `Vec` is a composite type that defines a group of indexed signals (of any SpinalHDL basic type) under a single name.

### 5.6.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare a vector is as follows:

Declaration	Description
<code>Vec(type: Data, size: Int)</code>	Create a vector capable of holding <code>size</code> elements of type <code>Data</code>
<code>Vec(x,y,..)</code>	Create a vector where indexes point to given elements. this constructor supports mixed element width

## Examples

```
// Create a vector of 2 signed integers
val myVecOfSInt = Vec(SInt(8 bits),2)
myVecOfSInt(0) := 2
myVecOfSInt(1) := myVecOfSInt(0) + 3

// Create a vector of 3 different type elements
val myVecOfMixedUInt = Vec(UInt(3 bits), UInt(5 bits), UInt(8 bits))

val x,y,z = UInt(8 bits)
val myVecOf_xyz_ref = Vec(x,y,z)

// Iterate on a vector
for(element <- myVecOf_xyz_ref){
  element := 0 //Assign x,y,z with the value 0
}

// Map on vector
myVecOfMixedUInt.map(_ := 0) // assign all element with value 0

// Assign 3 to the first element of the vector
myVecOf_xyz_ref(1) := 3
```

### 5.6.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the Bundle type

#### Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>x === y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x !== y</code>	Inequality	Bool

```
// Create a vector of 2 signed integers
val vec2 = Vec(SInt(8 bits), 2)
val vec1 = Vec(SInt(8 bits), 2)

myBool := vec2 === vec1 // compare all elements
```

#### Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.asBits</code>	Binary cast to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)

```
// Create a vector of 2 signed integers
val vec1 = Vec(SInt(8 bits), 2)

myBits_16bits := vec1.asBits
```

## Misc

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.getBitsWidth</code>	Return the full size of the Vec	Int

```
// Create a vector of 2 signed integers
val vec1 = Vec(SInt(8 bits), 2)

println(vec1.getBitsWidth) // 16
```

**Warning:** The SpinalHDL fixed point support is only partially used/tested, if you find any bugs with it or you think that some functionality is missing, please create a github issue. Also, please do not use undocumented features in production code.

## 5.7 UFix/SFix

### 5.7.1 Description

The UFix and SFix types correspond to a vector of bits that can be used for fixed point arithmetic.

### 5.7.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare a fixed point number is as follows:

#### Unsigned Fixed Point

Syntax	bit width	resolution	max	min
UFix(peak:ExpNumber, resolution:ExpNumber)	peak-resolution	$2^{\text{resolution}}$	$2^{\text{peak}} - 2^{\text{resolution}}$	0
UFix(peak:ExpNumber, width:BitCount)	width	$2^{(\text{peak} - \text{width})}$	$2^{\text{peak}} - 2^{(\text{peak} - \text{width})}$	0

#### Signed Fixed Point

Syntax	bit width	resolution	max	min
SFix(peak:ExpNumber, resolution:ExpNumber)	peak-resolution+1	$2^{\text{resolution}}$	$2^{\text{peak}} - 2^{\text{resolution}}$	$-(2^{\text{peak}})$
SFix(peak:ExpNumber, width:BitCount)	width	$2^{(\text{peak} - \text{width} - 1)}$	$2^{\text{peak}} - 2^{(\text{peak} - \text{width} - 1)}$	$-(2^{\text{peak}})$

## Format

The chosen format follows the usual way of defining fixed point number format using Q notation. More information [there](#)).

For example Q8.2 will mean an fixed point of 8+2 bits, where 8 bit are used for the natural part and 2 bits for the fractional part. If the fixed point number is signed, one more bit is used for the sign.

The resolution is defined as being the smallest power of two that can be represented in this number.

## Examples

```
// Unsigned Fixed Point
val UQ_8_2 = UFix(peak = 8 exp, resolution = -2 exp)
val UQ_8_2 = UFix(8 exp, -2 exp)

val UQ_8_2 = UFix(peak = 8 exp, width = 10 bits)
val UQ_8_2 = UFix(8 exp, 10 bits)

// Signed Fixed Point
val Q_8_2 = SFix(peak = 8 exp, resolution = -2 exp)
val Q_8_2 = SFix(8 exp, -2 exp)

val Q_8_2 = SFix(peak = 8 exp, width = 11 bits)
val Q_8_2 = SFix(8 exp, 11 bits)
```

## 5.7.3 Assignments

### Valid Assignments

An assignment to a fixed point value is valid when there is no bit loss. Any bit loss will result in an error.

If the source fixed point value is too big, the `.truncated` function will allow you to resize the source number to match the destination size.

### Example

```
val i16_m2 = SFix(16 exp, -2 exp)
val i16_0  = SFix(16 exp, 0 exp)
val i8_m2  = SFix(8 exp, -2 exp)
val o16_m2 = SFix(16 exp, -2 exp)
val o16_m0 = SFix(16 exp, 0 exp)
val o14_m2 = SFix(14 exp, -2 exp)

o16_m2 := i16_m2           // OK
o16_m0 := i16_m2           // Not OK, Bit loss
o14_m2 := i16_m2           // Not OK, Bit loss
o16_m0 := i16_m2.truncated // OK, as it is resized
o14_m2 := i16_m2.truncated // OK, as it is resized
```

## From a Scala constant

Scala BigInts or Doubles can be used as constants when assigning to UFix or SFix signals.

### Example

```
val i4_m2 = SFix(4 exp, -2 exp)
i4_m2 := 1.25    //Will load 5 in i4_m2.raw
i4_m2 := 4       //Will load 16 in i4_m2.raw
```

## 5.7.4 Raw value

The integer representation of the fixed point number can be read or written using the raw property.

### Example

```
val UQ_8_2 = UFix(8 exp, 10 bits)
UQ_8_2.raw := 4    //Assign the value corresponding to 1.0
UQ_8_2.raw := U(17) //Assign the value corresponding to 4.25
```

## 5.7.5 Operators

The following operators are available for the UFix type

### Arithmetic

Operator	Description	Returned resolution	Returned amplitude
x + y	Addition	Min(x.resolution, y.resolution)	Max(x.amplitude, y.amplitude)
x - y	Subtraction	Min(x.resolution, y.resolution)	Max(x.amplitude, y.amplitude)
x * y	Multiplication	x.resolution * y.resolution	x.amplitude * y.amplitude
x >> y	Arithmetic shift right, y : Int	x.amplitude >> y	x.resolution >> y
x << y	Arithmetic shift left, y : Int	x.amplitude << y	x.resolution << y
x >>  y	Arithmetic shift right, y : Int	x.amplitude >> y	x.resolution
x <<  y	Arithmetic shift left, y : Int	x.amplitude << y	x.resolution

## Comparison

Operator	Description	Return type
<code>x === y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x != y</code>	Inequality	Bool
<code>x &gt; y</code>	Greater than	Bool
<code>x &gt;= y</code>	Greater than or equal	Bool
<code>x &lt; y</code>	Less than	Bool
<code>x &lt;= y</code>	Less than or equal	Bool

## Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.asBits</code>	Binary cast to Bits	Bits(w(x) bits)
<code>x.asUInt</code>	Binary cast to UInt	UInt(w(x) bits)
<code>x.asSInt</code>	Binary cast to SInt	SInt(w(x) bits)
<code>x.asBools</code>	Cast into a array of Bool	Vec(Bool,width(x))
<code>x.toUInt</code>	Return the corresponding UInt (with truncation)	UInt
<code>x.toSInt</code>	Return the corresponding SInt (with truncation)	SInt
<code>x.toUFix</code>	Return the corresponding UFix	UFix
<code>x.toSFix</code>	Return the corresponding SFix	SFix

## Misc

Name	Return	Description
<code>x.maxValue</code>	Return the maximum value storable	Double
<code>x.minValue</code>	Return the minimum value storable	Double
<code>x.resolution</code>	<code>x.amplitude * y.amplitude</code>	Double

**Warning:** The SpinalHDL floating point support is under development and only partially used/tested, if you have any bug with it or you think that an functionality is missing, please create a github issue. Please, do not use undocumented features.

## 5.8 Floating

### 5.8.1 Description

The `Floating` type corresponds to IEEE-754 encoded numbers. A second type called `RecFloating` helps in simplifying your design by recoding the floating point value simplify some edge cases in IEEE-754 floating point

It's composed of a sign bit, an exponent field and a mantissa field. The widths of the different fields are defined in the IEEE-754 or de-facto standards.

This type can be used with the following import

```
import spinal.lib.experimental.math._
```



## IEEE-754 floating format

The numbers are encoded into IEEE-754 [floating point format](#).

## Recoded floating format

Since IEEE-754 has some quirks about denormalized numbers and special values, Berkeley proposed another way of recoding floating point values.

The mantissa is modified so that denormalized values can be treated the same as the normalized ones.

The exponent field is one bit larger than one of the IEEE-754 number.

The sign bit is kept unchanged between the two encodings.

Examples can be found [here](#)

## Zero

The zero is encoded with the three leading zeros of the exponent field being stuck to zero.

## Denormalized values

Denormalized values are encoded in the same way as a normal floating point number. The mantissa is shifted so that the first one becomes implicit. The exponent is encoded as 107 (decimal) plus the index of the highest bit set to 1.

## Normalized values

The recoded mantissa for normalized values is exactly the same as the original IEEE-754 mantissa. The recoded exponent is encoded as 130 (decimal) plus the original exponent value.

## Infinity

The recoded mantissa value is treated as don't care. The recoded exponent three highest bits is 6 (decimal), the rest of the exponent can be treated as don't care.

## NaN

The recoded mantissa for normalized values is exactly the same as the original IEEE-754 mantissa. The recoded exponent three highest bits is 7 (decimal), the rest of the exponent can be treated as don't care.

## 5.8.2 Declaration

The syntax to declare a floating point number is as follows:

## IEEE-754 Number

Syntax	Description
Floating(exponentSize: Int, mantissaSize: Int)	IEEE-754 Floating point value with a custom exponent and mantissa size
Floating16()	IEEE-754 Half precision floating point number
Floating32()	IEEE-754 Single precision floating point number
Floating64()	IEEE-754 Double precision floating point number
Floating128()	IEEE-754 Quad precision floating point number

## Recoded floating point number

Syntax	Description
RecFloating(exponentSize: Int, mantissaSize: Int)	Recoded Floating point value with a custom exponent and mantissa size
RecFloating16()	Recoded Half precision floating point number
RecFloating32()	Recoded Single precision floating point number
RecFloating64()	Recoded Double precision floating point number
RecFloating128()	Recoded Quad precision floating point number

## 5.8.3 Operators

The following operators are available for the `Floating` and `RecFloating` types

### Type cast

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x.asBits</code>	Binary cast to Bits	<code>Bits(w(x) bits)</code>
<code>x.asBools</code>	Cast into a array of Bool	<code>Vec(Bool,width(x))</code>
<code>x.toUInt(size: Int)</code>	Return the corresponding UInt (with truncation)	UInt
<code>x.toSInt(size: Int)</code>	Return the corresponding SInt (with truncation)	SInt
<code>x.fromUInt</code>	Return the corresponding Floating (with truncation)	UInt
<code>x.fromSInt</code>	Return the corresponding Floating (with truncation)	SInt

## 5.9 Introduction

The language provides 5 base types and 2 composite types that can be used.

- Base types: *Bool* , *Bits* , *UInt* for unsigned integers, *SInt* for signed integers and *Enum*.
- Composite types: *Bundle* and *Vec*.



In addition to the base types, Spinal supports Fixed point that is documented [here](#) and floating point that is actually under development [here](#).

Finally, a special type is available for checking equality between a BitVector and a bits constant that contains holes (don't care values). An example is shown below:

```

val myBits = Bits(8 bits)
val itMatch = myBits === M"00--10--" // - don't care value
  
```



## STRUCTURING

### 6.1 Component and hierarchy

#### 6.1.1 Introduction

Like in VHDL and Verilog, you can define components that can be used to build a design hierarchy. However, in SpinalHDL, you don't need to bind their ports at instantiation

```
class AdderCell extends Component {
  //Declaring all in/out in an io Bundle is probably a good practice
  val io = new Bundle {
    val a, b, cin = in Bool
    val sum, cout = out Bool
  }
  //Do some logic
  io.sum := io.a ^ io.b ^ io.cin
  io.cout := (io.a & io.b) | (io.a & io.cin) | (io.b & io.cin)
}

class Adder(width: Int) extends Component {
  ...
  //Create 2 AdderCell
  val cell0 = new AdderCell
  val cell1 = new AdderCell
  cell1.io.cin := cell0.io.cout //Connect cout of cell0 to cin of cell1

  // Another example which create an array of ArrayCell
  val cellArray = Array.fill(width)(new AdderCell)
  cellArray(1).io.cin := cellArray(0).io.cout //Connect cout of cell(0) to cin of
  ↪ cell(1)
  ...
}
```

---

**Tip:**

```
val io = new Bundle{ ... } :
```

Declaring all inputs and outputs in a Bundle named *io* is probably a good practice. If you call your bundle *io*, Spinal will check that all elements are defined as input or output.

---

## 6.1.2 Input / output definition

The syntax to define inputs and outputs is the following:

Syntax	Description	Return
in/out Bool	Create an input/output Bool	Bool
in/out Bits/UInt/SInt[(x bit)]	Create an input/output of the corresponding type	T
in/out(T)	For all other data types, you should add the brackets around it. Sorry this is a Scala limitation.	T
master/slave(T)	This syntax is provided by the spinal.lib. T should extend IMasterSlave : Some documentation is available <a href="#">here</a>	T

There are some rules to follow with component interconnection:

- Components can only read output and input signals of child components
- Components can read their own output port values (unlike VHDL)

**Tip:** If for some reason, you need to read signals from far away in the hierarchy (debug, temporal patch) you can do it by using the value returned by *some.where.else.theSignal.pull()*.

## 6.1.3 Pruned signals

SpinalHDL only generates things which are required to drive the outputs of your top level entity (directly or indirectly).

All other signals (the useless ones) are removed from the RTL generation and are inserted into a list of pruned signals. You can get this list via the `printPruned` and the `printPrunedIo` function on the generated `SpinalReport`.

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle{
    val a,b = in UInt(8 bits)
    val result = out UInt(8 bits)
  }

  io.result := io.a + io.b

  val unusedSignal = UInt(8 bits)
  val unusedSignal2 = UInt(8 bits)

  unusedSignal2 := unusedSignal
}

object Main{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new TopLevel).printPruned()
    //This will report :
    // [Warning] Unused wire detected : toplevel/unusedSignal : UInt[8 bits]
    // [Warning] Unused wire detected : toplevel/unusedSignal2 : UInt[8 bits]
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

}
}

```

If you want to keep a pruned signal into the generated RTL for debug reasons, you can use the `keep` function of that signal:

```

class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle{
    val a,b = in UInt(8 bits)
    val result = out UInt(8 bits)
  }

  io.result := io.a + io.b

  val unusedSignal = UInt(8 bits)
  val unusedSignal2 = UInt(8 bits).keep()

  unusedSignal := 0
  unusedSignal2 := unusedSignal
}

object Main{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new TopLevel).printPruned()
    //This will report nothing
  }
}

```

### 6.1.4 Generic(VHDL) / Parameter(Verilog)

If you want to parameterize your component, you can give parameters to the constructor of the component as follows:

```

class MyAdder(width: BitCount) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle{
    val a,b = in UInt(width)
    val result = out UInt(width)
  }
  io.result := io.a + io.b
}

object Main{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new MyAdder(32 bits))
  }
}

```

If you have several parameters, it is a good practice to give a specific configuration class as follows:

```

case class MySocConfig(axiFrequency : HertzNumber,
                      onChipRamSize : BigInt,
                      cpu           : RiscCoreConfig,
                      iCache        : InstructionCacheConfig)

class MySoc(config: MySocConfig) extends Component {

```

(continues on next page)

```
}    ...  
}
```

## 6.2 Area

### 6.2.1 Area

Sometimes, creating a `Component` to define some logic is overkill because you:

- Need to define all construction parameters and IO (verbosity, duplication)
- Split your code (more than needed)

For this kind of case you can use an `Area` to define a group of signals/logic.

```
class UartCtrl extends Component {  
    ...  
    val timer = new Area {  
        val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bit))  
        val tick = counter === 0  
        counter := counter - 1  
        when(tick) {  
            counter := 100  
        }  
    }  
  
    val tickCounter = new Area {  
        val value = Reg(UInt(3 bit))  
        val reset = False  
        when(timer.tick) {           // Refer to the tick from timer area  
            value := value + 1  
        }  
        when(reset) {  
            value := 0  
        }  
    }  
  
    val stateMachine = new Area {  
        ...  
    }  
}
```

---

**Tip:**

In VHDL and Verilog, sometimes prefixes are used to separate variables into logical sections. It is suggested that you use `Area` instead of this in SpinalHDL.

---

---

**Note:** `ClockingArea` is a special kind of `Area` that allows you to define chunks of hardware which use a given `ClockDomain`

---



## 6.3 Function

### 6.3.1 Introduction

The ways you can use Scala functions to generate hardware are radically different than VHDL/Verilog for many reasons:

- You can instantiate registers, combinatorial logic and components inside them.
- You don't have to play with process/@always that limit the scope of assignment of signals
- Everything is passed by reference, which allows easy manipulation.  
For example you can give a bus to a function as an argument, then the function can internally read/write to it.  
You can also return a Component, a Bus, or anything else from scala and the scala world.

### 6.3.2 RGB to gray

For example if you want to convert a Red/Green/Blue color into greyscale by using coefficients, you can use functions to apply them:

```
// Input RGB color
val r, g, b = UInt(8 bits)

// Define a function to multiply a UInt by a scala Float value.
def coef(value: UInt, by: Float): UInt = (value * U((255*by).toInt, 8 bits) >> 8)

// Calculate the gray level
val gray = coef(r, 0.3f) + coef(g, 0.4f) + coef(b, 0.3f)
```

### 6.3.3 Valid Ready Payload bus

For instance if you define a simple Valid Ready Payload bus, you can then define some useful functions inside of it.

```
class MyBus(payloadWidth: Int) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
  val valid = Bool
  val ready = Bool
  val payload = Bits(payloadWidth bits)

  // define the direction of the data in a master mode
  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    out(valid, payload)
    in(ready)
  }

  // Connect that to this
  def <<(that: MyBus): Unit = {
    this.valid := that.valid
    that.ready := this.ready
    this.payload := that.payload
  }

  // Connect this to the FIFO input, return the fifo output
  def queue(size: Int): MyBus = {
    val fifo = new MyBusFifo(payloadWidth, size)
    fifo.io.push << this
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    return fifo.io.pop
  }
}

class MyBusFifo(payloadWidth: Int, depth: Int) extends Component {

  val io = new Bundle {
    val push = slave(MyBus(payloadWidth))
    val pop  = master(MyBus(payloadWidth))
  }

  val mem = Mem(Bits(payloadWidth bits), depth)

  // ...
}
```

## 6.4 Clock domains

### 6.4.1 Introduction

In *SpinalHDL*, clock and reset signals can be combined to create a **clock domain**. Clock domains can be applied to some areas of the design and then all synchronous elements instantiated into those areas will then **implicitly** use this clock domain.

Clock domain application works like a stack, which means that if you are in a given clock domain you can still apply another clock domain locally.

### 6.4.2 Instantiation

The syntax to define a clock domain is as follows (using EBNF syntax):

```
ClockDomain(
  clock: Bool
  [,reset: Bool]
  [,softReset: Bool]
  [,clockEnable: Bool]
  [,frequency: IClockDomainFrequency]
  [,config: ClockDomainConfig]
)
```

This definition takes five parameters:

Argument	Description	Default
clock	Clock signal that defines the domain	
reset	Reset signal. If a register which needs a reset and the clock domain doesn't provide one, an error message will be displayed	null
softReset	Reset which infers an additional synchronous reset	null
clockEnable	The goal of this signal is to disable the clock on the whole clock domain without having to manually implement that on each synchronous element	null
frequency	Allows you to specify the frequency of the given clock domain and later read it in your design	Unknown-Frequency
config	Specify the polarity of signals and the nature of the reset	Current config

An applied example to define a specific clock domain within the design is as follows:

```

val coreClock = Bool
val coreReset = Bool

// Define a new clock domain
val coreClockDomain = ClockDomain(coreClock, coreReset)

// Use this domain in an area of the design
val coreArea = new ClockingArea(coreClockDomain){
  val coreClockedRegister = Reg(UInt(4 bit))
}

```

## Configuration

In addition to the constructor parameters given [here](#), the following elements of each clock domain are configurable via a `ClockDomainConfig` class:

Property	Valid values
clockEdge	RISING, FALLING
resetKind	ASYNC, SYNC, BOOT which is supported by some FPGAs (where FF values loaded by the bitstream)
resetActiveLevel	HIGH, LOW
softResetActiveLevel	HIGH, LOW
clockEnableActiveLevel	HIGH, LOW

```

class CustomClockExample extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val clk    = in Bool
    val resetn = in Bool
    val result = out UInt (4 bits)
  }

  // configure the clock domain
  val myClockDomain = ClockDomain(
    clock = io.clk,
    reset = io.resetn,
    config = ClockDomainConfig(

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        clockEdge      = RISING,
        resetKind       = ASYNC,
        resetActiveLevel = LOW
    )
)

// Define an Area which use myClockDomain
val myArea = new ClockingArea(myClockDomain) {
    val myReg = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(7)

    myReg := myReg + 1

    io.result := myReg
}
}

```

By default, a ClockDomain is applied to the whole design. The configuration of this one is :

- Clock : rising edge
- Reset : asynchronous, active high
- No clock enable

### Internal clock

An alternative syntax to create a clock domain is the following:

```

ClockDomain.internal(
    name: String,
    [config: ClockDomainConfig,]
    [withReset: Boolean,]
    [withSoftReset: Boolean,]
    [withClockEnable: Boolean,]
    [frequency: IClockDomainFrequency]
)

```

This definition takes six parameters:

Argument	Description	Default
name	Name of clk and reset signal	
config	Specify polarity of signals and the nature of the reset	Current config
withReset	Add a reset signal	true
withSoftReset	Add a soft reset signal	false
withClockEnable	Add a clock enable	false
frequency	Frequency of the clock domain	Unknown-Frequency

Its advantage is to create clock and reset signals with a specified name instead of an inherited one. Then you have to assign those ClockDomain's signals as shown in the example below:

```

class InternalClockWithPllExample extends Component {
    val io = new Bundle {
        val clk100M = in Bool
        val aReset  = in Bool
        val result  = out UInt (4 bits)
    }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

}
// myClockDomain.clock will be named myClockName_clk
// myClockDomain.reset will be named myClockName_reset
val myClockDomain = ClockDomain.internal("myClockName")

// Instanciate a PLL (probably a BlackBox)
val pll = new Pll()
pll.io.clkIn := io.clk100M

// Assign myClockDomain signals with something
myClockDomain.clock := pll.io.clockOut
myClockDomain.reset := io.aReset || !pll.io.

// Do whatever you want with myClockDomain
val myArea = new ClockingArea(myClockDomain){
  val myReg = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(7)
  myReg := myReg + 1

  io.result := myReg
}
}

```

## External clock

You can define a clock domain which is driven by the outside anywhere in your source. It will then automatically add clock and reset wire from the top level inputs to all synchronous elements.

```

ClockDomain.external(
  name: String,
  [config: ClockDomainConfig,]
  [withReset: Boolean,]
  [withSoftReset: Boolean,]
  [withClockEnable: Boolean,]
  [frequency: IClockDomainFrequency]
)

```

The arguments to the `ClockDomain.external` function are exactly the same as in the `ClockDomain.internal` function. Below an example of a design using `ClockDomain.external`.

```

class ExternalClockExample extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val result = out UInt (4 bits)
  }

  // On top level you have two signals :
  //   myClockName_clk and myClockName_reset
  val myClockDomain = ClockDomain.external("myClockName")

  val myArea = new ClockingArea(myClockDomain){
    val myReg = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(7)
    myReg := myReg + 1

    io.result := myReg
  }
}

```

## Context

You can retrieve in which clock domain you are by calling `ClockDomain.current` anywhere.

The returned `ClockDomain` instance has the following functions that can be called:

name	Description	Return
frequency.getValue	Return the frequency of the clock domain	Double
hasReset	Return if the clock domain has a reset signal	Boolean
hasSoftReset	Return if the clock domain has a reset signal	Boolean
hasClockEnable	Return if the clock domain has a clock enable signal	Boolean
readClockWire	Return a signal derived by the clock signal	Bool
readResetWire	Return a signal derived by the reset signal	Bool
readSoftResetWire	Return a signal derived by the reset signal	Bool
readClockEnableWire	Return a signal derived by the clock enable signal	Bool
isResetActive	Return True when the reset is active	Bool
isSoftResetActive	Return True when the softReset is active	Bool
isClockEnableActive	Return True when the clock enable is active	Bool

An example is included below where a UART controller uses the frequency specification to set its clock divider:

```
val coreClockDomain = ClockDomain(coreClock, coreReset, ↵
↵frequency=FixedFrequency(100e6))

val coreArea = new ClockingArea(coreClockDomain){
  val ctrl = new UartCtrl()
  ctrl.io.config.clockDivider := (coreClk.frequency.getValue / 57.6e3 / 8).toInt
}
```

### 6.4.3 Clock domain crossing

SpinalHDL checks at compile time that there is no unwanted/unspecified cross clock domain signal reads. If you want to read a signal that is emitted by another `ClockDomain` area, you should add the `crossClockDomain` tag to the destination signal as depicted in the following example:

```
//
//      |-----| (crossClockDomain) |-----|
// dataIn -->|   |----->|   |----->|   |--> dataOut
//      | FF |           | FF |           | FF |
// clkA  -->|   |           clkB -->|   |   clkB -->|   |
// rstA  -->|_____|       rstB -->|_____|   rstB -->|_____|

// Implementation where clock and reset pins are given by components IO
class CrossingExample extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    val clkA = in Bool
    val rstA = in Bool

    val clkB = in Bool
    val rstB = in Bool

    val dataIn  = in Bool
    val dataOut = out Bool
  }

  // sample dataIn with clkA
  val area_clkA = new ClockingArea(ClockDomain(io.clkA,io.rstA)){
    val reg = RegNext(io.dataIn) init(False)
  }

  // 2 register stages to avoid metastability issues
  val area_clkB = new ClockingArea(ClockDomain(io.clkB,io.rstB)){
    val buf0  = RegNext(area_clkA.reg) init(False) addTag(crossClockDomain)
    val buf1  = RegNext(buf0)          init(False)
  }

  io.dataOut := area_clkB.buf1
}

//Alternative implementation where clock domains are given as parameters
class CrossingExample(clkA : ClockDomain,clkB : ClockDomain) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val dataIn  = in Bool
    val dataOut = out Bool
  }

  // sample dataIn with clkA
  val area_clkA = new ClockingArea(clkA){
    val reg = RegNext(io.dataIn) init(False)
  }

  // 2 register stages to avoid metastability issues
  val area_clkB = new ClockingArea(clkB){
    val buf0  = RegNext(area_clkA.reg) init(False) addTag(crossClockDomain)
    val buf1  = RegNext(buf0)          init(False)
  }

  io.dataOut := area_clkB.buf1
}

```

In general you can use 2 or more flip-flop driven by the destination clock domain to prevent metastability. The `BufferCC(input: T, init: T = null, bufferDepth: Int = 2)` function provided in `spinal.lib`. \_ will instantiate the necessary flip-flop (the number of flip flop will depends on the `bufferDepth`) to mitigate the phenomena.

```

class CrossingExample(clkA : ClockDomain,clkB : ClockDomain) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val dataIn  = in Bool
    val dataOut = out Bool
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// sample dataIn with clkA
val area_clkA = new ClockingArea(clkA){
  val reg = RegNext(io.dataIn) init(False)
}

// BufferCC to avoid metastability issues
val area_clkB = new ClockingArea(clkB){
  val buf1 = BufferCC(area_clkA.reg, False)
}

io.dataOut := area_clkB.buf1
}
```

**Warning:** The BufferCC is only for signal Bit, or Bits with Gray-coded(Only 1 bit flip per clock cycle), Can not used for Multi-bits cross-domain process.

## 6.4.4 Special clocking Areas

### Slow Area

A SlowArea is used to create a new clock domain area which is slower than the current one.

```
class TopLevel extends Component {

  // Use the current clock domain : 100MHz
  val areaStd = new Area {
    val counter = out(CounterFreeRun(16).value)
  }

  // Slow the current clockDomain by 4 : 25 MHz
  val areaDiv4 = new SlowArea(4){
    val counter = out(CounterFreeRun(16).value)
  }

  // Slow the current clockDomainn to 50MHz
  val area50Mhz = new SlowArea(50 MHz){
    val counter = out(CounterFreeRun(16).value)
  }
}

def main(args: Array[String]) {
  new SpinalConfig(
    defaultClockDomainFrequency = FixedFrequency(100 MHz)
  ).generateVhdl(new TopLevel)
}
```



## ResetArea

A `ResetArea` is used to create a new clock domain area where a special reset signal is combined with the current clock domain reset.

```
class TopLevel extends Component {

    val specialReset = Bool

    // The reset of this area is done with the specialReset signal
    val areaRst_1 = new ResetArea(specialReset, false){
        val counter = out(CounterFreeRun(16).value)
    }

    // The reset of this area is a combination between the current reset and the_
    ↪specialReset
    val areaRst_2 = new ResetArea(specialReset, true){
        val counter = out(CounterFreeRun(16).value)
    }
}
```

## ClockEnableArea

A `ClockEnableArea` is used to add an additional clock enable in the current clock domain.

```
class TopLevel extends Component {

    val clockEnable = Bool

    // Add a clock enable for this area
    val area_1 = new ClockEnableArea(clockEnable){
        val counter = out(CounterFreeRun(16).value)
    }
}
```

## 6.5 Instantiate VHDL and Verilog IP

### 6.5.1 Description

A blackbox allows the user to integrate an existing VHDL/Verilog component into the design by just specifying the interfaces. It's up to the simulator or synthesizer to do the elaboration correctly.

### 6.5.2 Defining an blackbox

An example of how to define a blackbox is shown below:

```
// Define a Ram as a BlackBox
class Ram_1w_1r(wordWidth: Int, wordCount: Int) extends BlackBox {

    // SpinalHDL will look at Generic classes to get attributes which
    // should be used as VHDL generics / Verilog parameter
    // You can use String Int Double Boolean and all SpinalHDL base types
    // as generic value
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

val generic = new Generic {
    val wordCount = Ram_1w_1r.this.wordCount
    val wordWidth = Ram_1w_1r.this.wordWidth
}

// Define io of the VHDL entity / Verilog module
val io = new Bundle {
    val clk = in Bool
    val wr = new Bundle {
        val en = in Bool
        val addr = in UInt (log2Up(wordCount) bit)
        val data = in Bits (wordWidth bit)
    }
    val rd = new Bundle {
        val en = in Bool
        val addr = in UInt (log2Up(wordCount) bit)
        val data = out Bits (wordWidth bit)
    }
}

//Map the current clock domain to the io.clk pin
mapClockDomain(clock=io.clk)
}

```

In VHDL, signals of type `Bool` will be translated into `std_logic` and `Bits` into `std_logic_vector`. If you want to get `std_ulogic`, you have to use a `BlackBoxULogic` instead of `BlackBox`.

In Verilog, `BlackBoxULogic` has no effect.

```

class Ram_1w_1r(wordWidth: Int, wordCount: Int) extends BlackBoxULogic {
    ...
}

```

### 6.5.3 Generics

There are two different ways to declare generics:

```

class Ram(wordWidth: Int, wordCount: Int) extends BlackBox {

    val generic = new Generic {
        val wordCount = Ram.this.wordCount
        val wordWidth = Ram.this.wordWidth
    }

    // OR

    addGeneric("wordCount", wordWidth)
    addGeneric("wordWidth", wordWidth)
}

```

### 6.5.4 Instantiating a blackbox

Instantiating a blackbox is just like instantiating a Component:

```
// Create the top level and instantiate the Ram
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val wr = new Bundle {
      val en  = in Bool
      val addr = in UInt (log2Up(16) bit)
      val data = in Bits (8 bit)
    }
    val rd = new Bundle {
      val en  = in Bool
      val addr = in UInt (log2Up(16) bit)
      val data = out Bits (8 bit)
    }
  }

  //Instantiate the blackbox
  val ram = new Ram_1w_1r(8,16)

  //Connect all the signals
  io.wr.en  <-> ram.io.wr.en
  io.wr.addr <-> ram.io.wr.addr
  io.wr.data <-> ram.io.wr.data
  io.rd.en  <-> ram.io.rd.en
  io.rd.addr <-> ram.io.rd.addr
  io.rd.data <-> ram.io.rd.data
}

object Main {
  def main(args: Array[String]): Unit = {
    SpinalVhdl(new TopLevel)
  }
}
```

### 6.5.5 Clock and reset mapping

In your blackbox definition you have to explicitly define clock and reset wires. To map signals of a ClockDomain to corresponding inputs of the blackbox you can use the `mapClockDomain` or `mapCurrentClockDomain` function. `mapClockDomain` has the following parameters:

name	type	default	description
clockDomain	ClockDomain	ClockDomain.current	Specify the clockDomain which provides the signals
clock	Bool	Nothing	Blackbox input which should be connected to the clockDomain clock
reset	Bool	Nothing	Blackbox input which should be connected to the clockDomain reset
enable	Bool	Nothing	Blackbox input which should be connected to the clockDomain enable

`mapCurrentClockDomain` has almost the same parameters as `mapClockDomain` but without the `clockDomain`.

For example:

```
class MyRam(clkDomain: ClockDomain) extends BlackBox {  
  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val clkA = in Bool  
    ...  
    val clkB = in Bool  
    ...  
  }  
  
  // Clock A is map on a specific clock Domain  
  mapClockDomain(clkDomain, io.clkA)  
  // Clock B is map on the current clock domain  
  mapCurrentClockDomain(io.clkB)  
}
```

### 6.5.6 io prefix

In order to avoid the prefix “io\_” on each of the IOs of the blackbox, you can use the function `noIoPrefix()` as shown below :

```
// Define the Ram as a BlackBox  
class Ram_1w_1r(wordWidth: Int, wordCount: Int) extends BlackBox {  
  
  val generic = new Generic {  
    val wordCount = Ram_1w_1r.this.wordCount  
    val wordWidth = Ram_1w_1r.this.wordWidth  
  }  
  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val clk = in Bool  
  
    val wr = new Bundle {  
      val en = in Bool  
      val addr = in UInt (log2Up(_wordCount) bit)  
      val data = in Bits (_wordWidth bit)  
    }  
    val rd = new Bundle {  
      val en = in Bool  
      val addr = in UInt (log2Up(_wordCount) bit)  
      val data = out Bits (_wordWidth bit)  
    }  
  }  
  
  noIoPrefix()  
  
  mapCurrentClockDomain(clock=io.clk)  
}
```

### 6.5.7 Rename all io of a blackbox

```
class MyRam() extends Blackbox {

  val io = new Bundle {
    val clk = in Bool
    val portA = new Bundle{
      val cs    = in Bool
      val rwn    = in Bool
      val dIn    = in Bits(32 bits)
      val dOut   = out Bits(32 bits)
    }
    val portB = new Bundle{
      val cs    = in Bool
      val rwn    = in Bool
      val dIn    = in Bits(32 bits)
      val dOut   = out Bits(32 bits)
    }
  }

  // Map the clk
  mapCurrentClockDomain(io.clk)

  // Remove io_ prefix
  noIoPrefix()

  // Function used to rename all signals of the blackbox
  private def renameIO(): Unit = {
    io.flatten.foreach(bt => {
      if(bt.getName().contains("portA")) bt.setName(bt.getName().repalce("portA_", "
→") + "_A")
      if(bt.getName().contains("portB")) bt.setName(bt.getName().repalce("portB_", "
→") + "_B")
    })
  }

  // Execute the function renameIO after the creation of the component
  addPrePostTask(() => renameIO())
}

// This code generate those names :
//   clk
//   cs_A, rwn_A, dIn_A, dOut_A
//   cs_B, rwn_B, dIn_B, dOut_B
```

### 6.5.8 Add RTL source

With the function `addRTLPath()` you can associate your RTL sources with the blackbox. After the generation of your Spinal code you can call the fonction `mergeRTLSource` to merge all sources together.

```
class MyBlackBox() extends Blackbox {

  val io = new Bundle {
    val clk    = in Bool
    val start  = in Bool
    val dIn    = in Bits(32 bits)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    val dOut = out Bits(32 bits)
    val ready = out Bool
}

// Map the clk
mapCurrentClockDomain(io.clk)

// Remove io_ prefix
noIoPrefix()

// Add all rtl dependencies
addRTLPath("./rtl/RegisterBank.v")
addRTLPath(s"./rtl/myDesign.vhd")
addRTLPath(s"${sys.env("MY_PROJECT")}/myTopLevel.vhd")
↪variable MY_PROJECT (System.getenv("MY_PROJECT"))

// Add a verilog file
// Add a vhd file
// Use an environnement

}

...

val report = SpinalVhdl(new MyBlackBox)
report.mergeRTLSource("mergeRTL") // merge all rtl sources into mergeRTL.vhd and
↪mergeRTL.v file

```

### 6.5.9 VHDL - No numeric type

If you want to use only `std_logic_vector` on your blackbox component, you can add the tag `noNumericType` to the blackbox.

```

class MyBlackBox() extends BlackBox{
    val io = new Bundle{
        val clk      = in  Bool
        val increment = in  Bool
        val initValue = in  UInt(8 bits)
        val counter   = out UInt(8 bits)
    }

    mapCurrentClockDomain(io.clk)

    noIoPrefix()

    addTag(noNumericType) // only std_logic_vector
}

```

The code above will generate the following VHDL:

```

component MyBlackBox is
    port(
        clk      : in  std_logic;
        increment : in  std_logic;
        initValue : in  std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
        counter   : out std_logic_vector(7 downto 0)
    );
end component;

```

**SEMANTIC**

## 7.1 Assignments

### 7.1.1 Assignments

There are multiple assignment operators:

Symbole	Description
<code>:=</code>	Standard assignment, equivalent to ' <code>&lt;=</code> ' in VHDL/Verilog : the last assignment to a variable wins, the value is not updated until the next simulation delta cycle
<code>\=</code>	Equivalent to <code>:=</code> in VHDL and <code>=</code> in Verilog the value is updated instantly
<code>&lt;&gt;</code>	Automatic connection between 2 signals or two bundles of the same type. Direction is inferred by using signal direction (in/out). (Similar behavioral to <code>:=</code> )

```
//Because of hardware concurrency, `a` is always read as '1' by b and c
val a,b,c = UInt(4 bits)
a := 0
b := a
a := 1 //a := 1 win
c := a

var x = UInt(4 bits)
val y,z = UInt(4 bits)
x := 0
y := x //y read x with the value 0
x \= x + 1
z := x //z read x with the value 1

// Automatic connection between two UART interfaces.
uartCtrl.io.uart <> io.uart
```

It is important to understand that in SpinalHDL, the nature of a signal (combinatorial/sequential) is defined in its declaration, not by the way it is assigned. All datatype instances will define a combinatorial signal, while a datatype instance wrapped with a `Reg(...)` will define a sequential (register) signal.

```

val a = UInt(4 bits) //Define a combinatorial signal
val b = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) //Define a registered signal
val c = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(0) //Define a registered signal which is set to 0 when
↪ a reset occurs

```

### 7.1.2 Width checking

SpinalHDL checks that the bit count of the left side and the right side of an assignment matches. There are multiple ways to adapt the width of a given BitVector (Bits, UInt, SInt):

Resizing ways	Description
<code>x := y.resized</code>	Assign x with a resized copy of y, resize value is automatically inferred to match x
<code>x := y.resize(newWidth)</code>	Assign x with a resized copy of y, size is manually calculated

There is one case where Spinal automatically resizes a value:

Assignment	Problem	SpinalHDL action
<code>myUIntOf_8bit := U(3)</code>	U(3) creates an UInt of 2 bits, which doesn't match the left side (8 bits)	Because U(3) is a “weak” bit count inferred signal, SpinalHDL resizes it automatically

### 7.1.3 Combinatorial loops

SpinalHDL checks that there are no combinatorial loops (latches) in your design. If one is detected, it raises an error and SpinalHDL will print the path of the loop.

## 7.2 When/Switch/Mux

### 7.2.1 When

As in VHDL and Verilog, signals can be conditionally assigned when a specified condition is met:

```

when(cond1){
  //execute when      cond1 is true
}.elsewhen(cond2){
  //execute when (not cond1) and cond2
}.otherwise{
  //execute when (not cond1) and (not cond2)
}

```



## 7.2.2 Switch

As in VHDL and Verilog, signals can be conditionally assigned when a signal has a defined value:

```
switch(x){
  is(value1){
    //execute when x === value1
  }
  is(value2){
    //execute when x === value2
  }
  default{
    //execute if none of precedent condition meet
  }
}
```

## 7.2.3 Local declaration

It is possible to define new signals into a when/switch statement:

```
val x,y = UInt(4 bits)
val a,b = UInt(4 bits)

when(cond){
  val tmp = a + b
  x := tmp
  y := tmp + 1
} otherwise {
  x := 0
  y := 0
}
```

**Note:** SpinalHDL checks that signals defined inside a scope are only assigned inside the scope they are defined in.

## 7.2.4 Mux

If you just need a Mux with a Bool selection signal, there are two equivalent syntaxes:

Syntax	Return	Description
Mux(cond, whenTrue, whenFalse)	T	Return whenTrue when cond is True, whenFalse otherwise
cond ? whenTrue   whenFalse	T	Return whenTrue when cond is True, whenFalse otherwise

```
val cond = Bool
val whenTrue, whenFalse = UInt(8 bits)
val muxOutput = Mux(cond, whenTrue, whenFalse)
val muxOutput2 = cond ? whenTrue | whenFalse
```

## 7.2.5 Bitwise selection

A bitwise selection looks like the VHDL `when` syntax.

### Example

```
val bitwiseSelect = UInt(2 bits)
val bitwiseResult = bitwiseSelect.mux(
  0 -> (io.src0 & io.src1),
  1 -> (io.src0 | io.src1),
  2 -> (io.src0 ^ io.src1),
  default -> (io.src0)
)
```

Also, if all possible values are covered in your mux, you can omit the default value:

```
val bitwiseSelect = UInt(2 bits)
val bitwiseResult = bitwiseSelect.mux(
  0 -> (io.src0 & io.src1),
  1 -> (io.src0 | io.src1),
  2 -> (io.src0 ^ io.src1),
  3 -> (io.src0)
)
```

`muxLists(...)` is another bitwise selection which take as input a sequence of tuples. Below an example of dividing a Bits of 128 bits into 32 bits:



```
val sel = UInt(2 bits)
val data = Bits(128 bits)

val dataWord = sel.muxList(for(index <- 0 until 4) yield (index, data(index*32+32-1_
↳downto index*32)))

// This example can be written shorter.
val dataWord = data.subdivideIn(32 bits)(sel)
```

## 7.3 Rules

### 7.3.1 Introduction

The semantics behind SpinalHDL are important to learn so you understand what is really happening behind the scenes and how to control it.

These semantics are defined by multiple rules:

- Signals and registers are concurrent to each other (Parallel behavioral, as in VHDL and Verilog)
- An assignement to a combinatorial signal is like expressing a rule which is always true
- An assignement to a register is like expressing a rule which is applied on each cycle of its clock domain
- For each signal, the last valid assignement wins
- Each signal and register can be manipulated as an object during the hardware elaboration in a OOP manner

### 7.3.2 Concurrency

The order in which you assign each combinatorial or register signals as no behavioral impact.

For example, both of the following pieces of code are equivalent:

```
val a, b, c = UInt(8 bits) // Define 3 combinatorial signals
c := a + b    // c will be set to 7
b := 2        // b will be set to 2
a := b + 3    // a will be set to 5
```

Is equivalent to:

```
val a, b, c = UInt(8 bits) // Define 3 combinatorial signals
b := 2    // b will be set to 2
a := b + 3 // a will be set to 5
c := a + b // c will be set to 7
```

More generally, when you use the `:=` assignement operator, it's like specifying a new rule for the left side signal/register.

### 7.3.3 Last valid assignement wins

If a combinatorial signal or register is assigned multiple times, the last valid one wins.

As an example:

```
val x, y = Bool    //Define two combinatorial signals
val result = UInt(8 bits) //Define a combinatorial signal

result := 1
when(x){
  result := 2
  when(y){
    result := 3
  }
}
```

Will produce the following truth table:

x	y	=>	result
False	False		1
False	True		1
True	False		2
True	True		3

### 7.3.4 Signal and register interactions with Scala (OOP reference + Functions)

In SpinalHDL, each hardware element is modeled by a class instance. This means you can manipulate them by using their reference, such as passing them as an argument to a function.

As an example, the following code implements a register which is incremented when `inc` is True and cleared when `clear` is True (clear has priority over inc) :

```
val inc, clear = Bool           //Define two combinatorial signal/wire
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) //Define a 8 bits register

when(inc){
  counter := counter + 1
}
when(clear){
  counter := 0    //If inc and clear are True, then this assignement wins (Last,
  ↪ valid assignement rule)
}
```

You can implement exactly the same functionality by mixing the previous example with a function that assigns to counter:

```
val inc, clear = Bool
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits))

def setCounter(value : UInt): Unit = {
  counter := value
}

when(inc){
  setCounter(counter + 1) // Set counter with counter + 1
}
when(clear){
  counter := 0
}
```

You can also integrate the conditional check inside the function:

```
val inc, clear = Bool
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits))

def setCounterWhen(cond : Bool, value : UInt): Unit = {
  when(cond) {
    counter := value
  }
}

setCounterWhen(cond = inc, value = counter + 1)
setCounterWhen(cond = clear, value = 0)
```

And also specify what should be assigned to the function:

```
val inc, clear = Bool
val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits))

def setSomethingWhen(something : UInt, cond : Bool, value : UInt): Unit = {
  when(cond) {
    something := value
  }
}

setSomethingWhen(something = counter, cond = inc, value = counter + 1)
setSomethingWhen(something = counter, cond = clear, value = 0)
```

All previous examples are strictly equivalent in their generated RTL but also from an SpinalHDL compiler perspective. This is because SpinalHDL only cares about the Scala runtime, it doesn't care about the Scala syntax itself.

In other words, from a generated RTL generation / SpinalHDL perspective, when you use functions in Scala which generate hardware, it is like the function was inlined. This is also true case for Scala loops, as they will appear like they were unrolled in the generated RTL.



## SEQUENTIAL LOGIC

### 8.1 Registers

#### 8.1.1 Introduction

Creating registers in SpinalHDL is very different than in VHDL or Verilog.

In Spinal, there are no process/always blocks. Registers are explicitly defined at declaration.

This difference from traditional event driven HDL has a big impact:

- You can assign registers and wires in the same scope, meaning the code doesn't need to be split between process/always blocks
- It make things much more flexible (see *Functions* )

Clocks and resets are handled separately, see the *Clock domain* chapter for details.

#### 8.1.2 Instantiation

There is 4 ways to instantiate a register:

Syntax	Description
<code>Reg(type : Data)</code>	Register of the given type
<code>RegInit(resetValue : Data)</code>	Register loaded with the given <code>resetValue</code> when a reset occurs
<code>RegNext(nextValue : Data)</code>	Register that samples the given <code>nextValue</code> each cycle
<code>RegNextWhen(nextValue : Data, cond : Bool)</code>	Register that samples the given <code>nextValue</code> when a condition occurs

Here is an example declaring some registers:

```
//UInt register of 4 bits
val reg1 = Reg(UInt(4 bit))

//Register that samples reg1 each cycle
val reg2 = RegNext(reg1 + 1)

//UInt register of 4 bits initialized with 0 when the reset occurs
val reg3 = RegInit(U"0000")
reg3 := reg2
when(reg2 === 5){
  reg3 := 0xF
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
//Register that samples reg3 when cond is True
val reg4 = RegNextWhen(reg3,cond)
```

The code above will infer the following logic:



#### Note:

The reg3 example shows how you can assign the value of a RegInit register. But it's possible to use the same syntax to assign to the other register types as well (Reg,RegNext,RegNextWhen).

Just like in combinational assignments, the rule is 'Last assignment wins', but if no assignment is done, the register keeps its value.

Also, RegNext is an abstraction which is built over the Reg syntax. The two following sequences of code are strictly equivalent:

```
//Standard way
val something = Bool
val value = Reg(Bool)
value := something

//Short way
val something = Bool
val value = RegNext(something)
```

### 8.1.3 Reset value

In addition to the RegInit(value : Data) syntax which directly creates the register with a reset value, you can also set the reset value by calling the init(value : Data) function on the register.

```
//UInt register of 4 bits initialized with 0 when the reset occur
val reg1 = Reg(UInt(4 bit)) init(0)
```

If you have a register containing a Bundle, you can use the init function on each element of the Bundle.

```
case class ValidRGB() extends Bundle{
  val valid = Bool
  val r,g,b = UInt(8 bits)
}

val reg = Reg(ValidRGB())
reg.valid init(False) //Only the valid of that register bundle will have an reset
↳value.
```



### 8.1.4 Initialization value for simulation purposes

For registers that don't need a reset value in RTL, but need an initialization value for simulation (to avoid x-propagation), you can ask for an random initialization value by calling the `randBoot()` function.

```
// UInt register of 4 bits initialized with a random value
val reg1 = Reg(UInt(4 bit)) randBoot()
```

## 8.2 RAM/ROM

### 8.2.1 Syntax

To create a memory in SpinalHDL, the `Mem` class should be used. It allows you to define a memory and add read and write ports to it.

The following table shows how to instantiate a memory:

Syntax	Description
<code>Mem(type : Data, size : Int)</code>	Create a RAM
<code>Mem(type : Data, initialContent : Array[Data])</code>	Create a ROM. If your target is an FPGA, because the memory can be inferred as a block ram, you can still create write ports on it.

---

**Note:** If you want to define a ROM, elements of the `initialContent` array should only be literal values (no operator, no resize functions). There is an example [here](#).

---



---

**Note:** To give an initial content to a RAM, you can also use the `init` function.

---

The following table show how to add access ports on a memory :

Syntax	Description	Return
<code>mem.writeSync(</code> <code>address</code> <code>:=</code> <code>data</code> <code>)</code>	Synchronous write	
<code>mem.readAsync(</code> <code>address</code> <code>)</code>	Asynchronous read	T
<code>mem.write(</code> <code>address</code>  <code>data</code>  <code>[enable]</code>  <code>[mask]</code>  <code>)</code>	Synchronous write with an optional mask. If no enable is specified, it's automatically inferred from the conditional scope where this function is called	T
<code>mem.readAsync(</code> <code>address</code>  <code>[readUnderWrite]</code>  <code>)</code>	Asynchronous read with an optional read under write policy	T
<code>mem.readSync(</code> <code>address</code>  <code>[enable]</code>  <code>[readUnderWrite]</code>  <code>[clockCrossing]</code>  <code>)</code>	Synchronous read with an optional enable, read under write policy and clockCrossing mode	T
<code>mem.readWriteSync(</code> <code>address</code> <code>data</code> <code>enable</code> <code>write</code>  <code>[mask]</code>  <code>[readUnderWrite]</code>  <code>[clockCrossing]</code>  <code>)</code>	Infer a read/write port. data is written when <code>enable &amp;&amp; write</code> . Return the read data, the read occurs when <code>enable</code> is true	T
92		Chapter 8. Sequential logic

---

**Note:** If for some reason you need a specific memory port which is not implemented in Spinal, you can always abstract your memory by specifying a BlackBox for it.

---



---

**Important:** Memory ports in SpinalHDL are not inferred but explicitly defined. You should not use coding templates like in VHDL/Verilog to help the synthesis tool to infer memory.

---

Here is a example which infers a simple dual port ram (32 bits \* 256):

```
val mem = Mem(Bits(32 bits),wordCount = 256)
mem.write(
  enable  = io.writeValid,
  address = io.writeAddress,
  data    = io.writeData
)

io.readData := mem.readSync(
  enable  = io.readValid,
  address = io.readAddress
)
```

### 8.2.2 Read under write policy

This policy specifies how a read is affected when a write occurs in the same cycle to the same address.

Kinds	Description
dontCare	Don't care about the read value when the case occurs
readFirst	The read will get the old value (before the write)
writeFirst	The read will get the new value (provided by the write)

---

**Important:** The generated VHDL/Verilog is always in the 'readFirst' mode, which is compatible with 'dontCare' but not with 'writeFirst'. To generate a design that contains this kind of feature, you need to enable the automatic memory blackboxing.

---

### 8.2.3 Mixed width ram

You can specify ports that access the memory with a width that is a power of two fraction of the memory width using these functions:

Syntax	Description
<pre>mem.writeMixedWidth(     address     data      [readUnderWrite] )</pre>	Similar to mem.write
<pre>mem.readAsyncMixedWidth(     address     data      [readUnderWrite] )</pre>	Similar to mem.readAsync, but in place to return the read value, it drive the data structure given as argument
<pre>mem.readSyncMixedWidth(     address     data     [enable]      [readUnderWrite]      [clockCrossing] )</pre>	Similar to mem.readSync, but in place to return the read value, it drive the data structure given as argument
<pre>mem.readWriteSyncMixedWidth(     address     data     enable     write     [mask]      [readUnderWrite]      [clockCrossing] )</pre>	Equivalent to mem.readWriteSync

**Important:** As for Read under write policy, to use this feature you need to enable the automatic memory black-

boxing, because there is no universal VHDL/Verilog language template to infer mixed width ram.

### 8.2.4 Automatic blackboxing

Because it's impossible to infer all ram kinds by using regular VHDL/Verilog, SpinalHDL integrates an optional automatic blackboxing system. This system looks at all memories present in your RTL netlist and replaces them with blackboxes. Then the generated code will rely on third party IP to provide the memory features, such as read during write policy and mixed width ports.

Here is an example of how to enable blackboxing of memories by default:

```
def main(args: Array[String]) {
  SpinalConfig()
    .addStandardMemBlackboxing(blackboxAll)
    .generateVhdl(new TopLevel)
}
```

If the standard blackboxing tools don't do enough for your design, do not hesitate to create a git issue. There is also a way to create your own blackboxing tool.

#### Blackboxing policy

There are multiple policies that you can use to select which memory you want to blackbox and also what to do when the blackboxing is not feasible:

Kinds	Description
blackboxAll	Blackbox all memory. Throw an error on unblackboxable memory
blackboxAllWhatsYouCan	Blackbox all memory that is blackboxable
blackboxRequestedAndUninferable	Blackbox memory specified by the user and memory that is known to be uninferable (mixed width, ...). Throw an error on unblackboxable memory
blackboxOnlyIfRequested	Blackbox memory specified by the user Throw an error on unblackboxable memory

To explicitly set a memory to be blackboxed, you can use its `generateAsBlackBox` function.

```
val mem = Mem(Rgb(rgbConfig), 1 << 16)
mem.generateAsBlackBox()
```

You can also define your own blackboxing policy by extending the `MemBlackboxingPolicy` class.

## Standard memory blackboxes

Here are the VHDL definitions of used blackboxes:

```
-- Simple asynchronous dual port (1 write port, 1 read port)
component Ram_1w_1ra is
  generic(
    wordCount : integer;
    wordWidth : integer;
    technology : string;
    readUnderWrite : string;
    wrAddressWidth : integer;
    wrDataWidth : integer;
    wrMaskWidth : integer;
    wrMaskEnable : boolean;
    rdAddressWidth : integer;
    rdDataWidth : integer
  );
  port(
    clk : in std_logic;
    wr_en : in std_logic;
    wr_mask : in std_logic_vector;
    wr_addr : in unsigned;
    wr_data : in std_logic_vector;
    rd_addr : in unsigned;
    rd_data : out std_logic_vector
  );
end component;

-- Simple synchronous dual port (1 write port, 1 read port)
component Ram_1w_1rs is
  generic(
    wordCount : integer;
    wordWidth : integer;
    clockCrossing : boolean;
    technology : string;
    readUnderWrite : string;
    wrAddressWidth : integer;
    wrDataWidth : integer;
    wrMaskWidth : integer;
    wrMaskEnable : boolean;
    rdAddressWidth : integer;
    rdDataWidth : integer;
    rdEnEnable : boolean
  );
  port(
    wr_clk : in std_logic;
    wr_en : in std_logic;
    wr_mask : in std_logic_vector;
    wr_addr : in unsigned;
    wr_data : in std_logic_vector;
    rd_clk : in std_logic;
    rd_en : in std_logic;
    rd_addr : in unsigned;
    rd_data : out std_logic_vector
  );
end component;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

-- Single port (1 readWrite port)
component Ram_1wrs is
  generic(
    wordCount : integer;
    wordWidth : integer;
    readUnderWrite : string;
    technology : string
  );
  port(
    clk : in std_logic;
    en : in std_logic;
    wr : in std_logic;
    addr : in unsigned;
    wrData : in std_logic_vector;
    rdData : out std_logic_vector
  );
end component;

--True dual port (2 readWrite port)
component Ram_2wrs is
  generic(
    wordCount : integer;
    wordWidth : integer;
    clockCrossing : boolean;
    technology : string;
    portA_readUnderWrite : string;
    portA_addressWidth : integer;
    portA_dataWidth : integer;
    portA_maskWidth : integer;
    portA_maskEnable : boolean;
    portB_readUnderWrite : string;
    portB_addressWidth : integer;
    portB_dataWidth : integer;
    portB_maskWidth : integer;
    portB_maskEnable : boolean
  );
  port(
    portA_clk : in std_logic;
    portA_en : in std_logic;
    portA_wr : in std_logic;
    portA_mask : in std_logic_vector;
    portA_addr : in unsigned;
    portA_wrData : in std_logic_vector;
    portA_rdData : out std_logic_vector;
    portB_clk : in std_logic;
    portB_en : in std_logic;
    portB_wr : in std_logic;
    portB_mask : in std_logic_vector;
    portB_addr : in unsigned;
    portB_wrData : in std_logic_vector;
    portB_rdData : out std_logic_vector
  );
end component;

```

As you can see, blackboxes have a technology parameter. To set it you can use the setTechnology function on the corresponding memory. There are currently 4 kinds of technology possible:

- `auto`
- `ramBlock`
- `distributedLut`
- `registerFile`



## DESIGN ERRORS

### 9.1 Assignment overlap

#### 9.1.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that no signal assignment completely erases a previous one.

#### 9.1.2 Example

The following code

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  a := 42  
  a := 66 //Erase the a := 42 :(  
}
```

will throw the following error:

```
ASSIGNMENT OVERLAP completely the previous one of (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits])  
***  
Source file location of the a := 66 assignment via the stack trace  
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  a := 42  
  when(something){  
    a := 66  
  }  
}
```

But in the case you really want to override the previous assignment (Yes, it could make sense in some cases), you can do the following:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  a := 42  
  a.allowOverride  
  a := 66  
}
```

## 9.2 Clock crossing violation

### 9.2.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that every register of your design only depends (through some combinatorial logic) on registers which use the same or a synchronous clock domain.

### 9.2.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val clkA = ClockDomain.external("clkA")
  val clkB = ClockDomain.external("clkB")

  val regA = clkA(Reg(UInt(8 bits))) //PlayDev.scala:834
  val regB = clkB(Reg(UInt(8 bits))) //PlayDev.scala:835

  val tmp = regA + regA //PlayDev.scala:838
  regB := tmp
}
```

will throw:

```
CLOCK CROSSING VIOLATION from (toplevel/regA : UInt[8 bits]) to (toplevel/regB : 
↳ UInt[8 bits]).
- Register declaration at
  ***
  Source file location of the toplevel/regA definition via the stack trace
  ***
- through
  >>> (toplevel/regA : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:834) >>>
  >>> (toplevel/tmp : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:838) >>>
  >>> (toplevel/regB : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:835) >>>
```

There are multiple possible fixes:

#### crossClockDomain tag

The crossClockDomain tag can be used to say “It’s alright, don’t panic” to SpinalHDL

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val clkA = ClockDomain.external("clkA")
  val clkB = ClockDomain.external("clkB")

  val regA = clkA(Reg(UInt(8 bits)))
  val regB = clkB(Reg(UInt(8 bits))).addTag(crossClockDomain)

  val tmp = regA + regA
  regB := tmp
}
```

## setSynchronousWith

You can also specify that two clock domains are synchronous together.

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val clkA = ClockDomain.external("clkA")
  val clkB = ClockDomain.external("clkB")
  clkB.setSynchronousWith(clkA)

  val regA = clkA(Reg(UInt(8 bits)))
  val regB = clkB(Reg(UInt(8 bits)))

  val tmp = regA + regA
  regB := tmp
}
```

## BufferCC

Signal Bits or Gray-coded Bits can use BufferCC to cross different clockDomain

```
class AsyncFifo extends Component {
  val popToPushGray = Bits(ptrWidth bits)
  val pushToPopGray = Bits(ptrWidth bits)

  val pushCC = new ClockingArea(pushClock) {
    val pushPtr      = Counter(depth << 1)
    val pushPtrGray  = RegNext(toGray(pushPtr.valueNext)) init(0)
    val popPtrGray   = BufferCC(popToPushGray, B(0, ptrWidth bits))
    val full         = isFull(pushPtrGray, popPtrGray)
    ...
  }

  val popCC = new ClockingArea(popClock) {
    val popPtr      = Counter(depth << 1)
    val popPtrGray  = RegNext(toGray(popPtr.valueNext)) init(0)
    val pushPtrGray = BufferCC(pushToPopGray, B(0, ptrWidth bit))
    val empty      = isEmpty(popPtrGray, pushPtrGray)
    ...
  }
}
```

**Warning:** Do not use BufferCC for general multi-Bits cross-domain process as mentioned under *Clock Domains*

## 9.3 Combinational loop

### 9.3.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that there are no combinatorial loops in the design.

### 9.3.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val a = UInt(8 bits) //PlayDev.scala line 831  
  val b = UInt(8 bits) //PlayDev.scala line 832  
  val c = UInt(8 bits)  
  val d = UInt(8 bits)  
  
  a := b  
  b := c | d  
  d := a  
  c := 0  
}
```

will throw :

```
COMBINATORIAL LOOP :  
Partial chain :  
  >>> (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:831) >>>  
  >>> (toplevel/d : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:834) >>>  
  >>> (toplevel/b : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:832) >>>  
  >>> (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]) at ***(PlayDev.scala:831) >>>  
  
Full chain :  
  (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits])  
  (toplevel/d : UInt[8 bits])  
  (UInt | UInt)[8 bits]  
  (toplevel/b : UInt[8 bits])  
  (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits])
```

A possible fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val a = UInt(8 bits) //PlayDev.scala line 831  
  val b = UInt(8 bits) //PlayDev.scala line 832  
  val c = UInt(8 bits)  
  val d = UInt(8 bits)  
  
  a := b  
  b := c | d  
  d := 42  
  c := 0  
}
```

### 9.3.3 False-positive

It should be said that SpinalHDL's algorithm to detect combinatorial loops can be pessimistic, and it may give false positives. If it is giving a false positive, you can manually disable loop checking on one signal of the loop like so:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val a = UInt(8 bits)
  a := 0
  a(1) := a(0) //False positive because of this line
}
```

could be fixed by :

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val a = UInt(8 bits).noCombLoopCheck
  a := 0
  a(1) := a(0)
}
```

It should also be said that assignments such as `a(1) := a(0)` can make some tools like Verilator unhappy. It may be better to use a `Vec(Bool, 8)` in this case.

## 9.4 Hierarchy violation

### 9.4.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that signals are never accessed outside of the current component's scope.

The following signals can be read inside a component:

- All directionless signals defined in the current component
- All in/out/inout signals of the current component
- All in/out/inout signals of children components

In addition, the following signals can be assigned to inside a component:

- All directionless signals defined in the current component
- All out/inout signals of the current component
- All in/inout signals of children components

If a `HIERARCHY VIOLATION` error appears, it means that one of the above rules was violated.

### 9.4.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val a = in UInt(8 bits)
  }
  val tmp = U"x42"
  io.a := tmp
}
```

will throw:

```
HIERARCHY VIOLATION : (toplevel/io_a : in UInt[8 bits]) is driven by (toplevel/tmp :   
↳ UInt[8 bits]), but isn't accessible in the toplevel component.  
***  
Source file location of the `io.a := tmp` via the stack trace  
***
```

A fix could be :

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val a = out UInt(8 bits) // changed from in to out  
  }  
  val tmp = U"x42"  
  io.a := tmp  
}
```

## 9.5 Io bundle

### 9.5.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that each io bundle contains only in/out/inout signals.

### 9.5.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  }  
}
```

will throw:

```
IO BUNDLE ERROR : A direction less (toplevel/io_a : UInt[8 bits]) signal was defined,  
↳ into toplevel component's io bundle  
***  
Source file location of the toplevel/io_a definition via the stack trace  
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val a = in UInt(8 bits)  
  }  
}
```

But if for meta hardware description reasons you really want io.a to be directionless, you can do:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  }  
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
a.allowDirectionLessIo
}
```

## 9.6 Latch detected

### 9.6.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that no combinatorial signal will infer a latch during synthesis. In other words, that no combinatorial signals are partially assigned.

### 9.6.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val cond = in(Bool)
  val a = UInt(8 bits)

  when(cond){
    a := 42
  }
}
```

will throw:

```
LATCH DETECTED from the combinatorial signal (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]), defined at
***
Source file location of the topLevel/io_a definition via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val cond = in(Bool)
  val a = UInt(8 bits)

  a := 0
  when(cond){
    a := 42
  }
}
```

## 9.7 No driver on

### 9.7.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that all combinatorial signals which have an impact on the design are assigned by something.

## 9.7.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val result = out(UInt(8 bits))  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  result := a  
}
```

will throw:

```
NO DRIVER ON (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]), defined at  
***  
Source file location of the topLevel/a definition via the stack trace  
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val result = out(UInt(8 bits))  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  a := 42  
  result := a  
}
```

## 9.8 NullPointerException

### 9.8.1 Introduction

NullPointerException is a Scala runtime reported error which can happen when a variable is accessed before it was initialised.

### 9.8.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  a := 42  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
}
```

will throw:

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.NullPointerException  
***  
Source file location of the a := 42 assignement via the stack trace  
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val a = UInt(8 bits)  
  a := 42  
}
```



**Issue explanation :**

SpinalHDL is not a language, it is a Scala library, which means it obeys the same rules as the Scala general purpose programming language. When you run your SpinalHDL hardware description to generate the corresponding VHDL/Verilog RTL, your SpinalHDL hardware description will be executed as a Scala program, and `a` will be a null reference until the program executes `val a = UInt(8 bits)`, so trying to assign it before then will result in a `NullPointerException`.

## 9.9 Register defined as component input

### 9.9.1 Introduction

In SpinalHDL, you are not allowed to define a component that has a register as an input. The reasoning behind this is to prevent surprises when the user tries to drive the inputs of child components with the registered signal. If a registered input is desired, you will need to declare the unregistered input in the `io` bundle, and register the signal in the body of the component.

### 9.9.2 Example

The following code :

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val a = in(Reg(UInt(8 bits)))
  }
}
```

will throw:

```
REGISTER DEFINED AS COMPONENT INPUT : (toplevel/io_a : in UInt[8 bits]) is defined as_
↳ a registered input of the toplevel component, but isn't allowed.
***
Source file location of the toplevel/io_a definition via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be :

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val a = in UInt(8 bits)
  }
}
```

If a registered `a` is really wanted, it can be done like so:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val a = in UInt(8 bits)
  }
  val a = RegNext(io.a)
}
```

## 9.10 Scope violation

### 9.10.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that there are no signals assigned outside the scope they are defined in. This error isn't easy to trigger as it requires some specific meta hardware description tricks.

### 9.10.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val cond = Bool()  
  
  var tmp : UInt = null  
  when(cond){  
    tmp = UInt(8 bits)  
  }  
  tmp := U"x42"  
}
```

will throw:

```
SCOPE VIOLATION : (toplevel/tmp : UInt[8 bits]) is assigned outside its declaration.  
↪scope at  
***  
Source file location of the tmp := U"x42" via the stack trace  
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val cond = Bool()  
  
  var tmp : UInt = UInt(8 bits)  
  when(cond){  
  
  }  
  tmp := U"x42"  
}
```

## 9.11 Spinal can't clone class

### 9.11.1 Introduction

This error happens when SpinalHDL wants to create a new datatype via the `cloneOf` function but isn't able to do it. The reasons for this is nearly always because it can't retrieve the construction parameters of a `Bundle`.

## 9.11.2 Example

The following code:

```
//cloneOf(this) isn't able to retrieve the width value that was used to construct_
↪ itself
class RGB(width : Int) extends Bundle{
  val r,g,b = UInt(width bits)
}

class TopLevel extends Component {
  val tmp = Stream(new RGB(8)) //Stream requires the capability to cloneOf(new RGB(8))
}
```

will throw:

```
*** Spinal can't clone class spinal.testster.PlayDevMessages$RGB datatype
*** You have two way to solve that :
*** In place to declare a "class Bundle(args){}", create a "case class Bundle(args){}"
*** Or override by your self the bundle clone function
***
    Source file location of the RGB class definition via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be:

```
case class RGB(width : Int) extends Bundle{
  val r,g,b = UInt(width bits)
}

class TopLevel extends Component {
  val tmp = Stream(RGB(8))
}
```

## 9.12 Unassigned register

### 9.12.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that all registers which impact the design have been assigned somewhere.

### 9.12.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val result = out(UInt(8 bits))
  val a = Reg(UInt(8 bits))
  result := a
}
```

will throw:

```
UNASSIGNED REGISTER (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]), defined at
***
    Source file location of the toplevel/a definition via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val result = out(UInt(8 bits))  
  val a = Reg(UInt(8 bits))  
  a := 42  
  result := a  
}
```

### 9.12.3 Register with only init

In some cases, because of the design parametrization, it could make sense to generate a register which has no assignment but only a init statement.

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val result = out(UInt(8 bits))  
  val a = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init(42)  
  
  if(something)  
    a := somethingElse  
  result := a  
}
```

will throw:

```
UNASSIGNED REGISTER (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]), defined at  
***  
Source file location of the topLevel/a definition via the stack trace  
***
```

To fix it you can ask SpinalHDL to transform the register into a combinatorial one if no assignement is present but it as a init statement:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {  
  val result = out(UInt(8 bits))  
  val a = Reg(UInt(8 bits)).init(42).allowUnsetRegToAvoidLatch  
  
  if(something)  
    a := somethingElse  
  result := a  
}
```

## 9.13 Unreachable is statement

### 9.13.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check all *is* statements in a switch are reachable.

### 9.13.2 Example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val sel = UInt(2 bits)
  val result = UInt(4 bits)
  switch(sel){
    is(0){ result := 4 }
    is(1){ result := 6 }
    is(2){ result := 8 }
    is(3){ result := 9 }
    is(0){ result := 2 } //Duplicated is statement!
  }
}
```

will throw:

```
UNREACHABLE IS STATEMENT in the switch statement at
***
Source file location of the is statement definition via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val sel = UInt(2 bits)
  val result = UInt(4 bits)
  switch(sel){
    is(0){ result := 4 }
    is(1){ result := 6 }
    is(2){ result := 8 }
    is(3){ result := 9 }
  }
}
```

## 9.14 Width mismatch

### 9.14.1 Introduction

SpinalHDL will check that signals on the left and right side of assignments and operators have the same width.

### 9.14.2 Assignment example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val a = UInt(8 bits)
  val b = UInt(4 bits)
  b := a
}
```

will throw:

```
WIDTH MISMATCH on (toplevel/b : UInt[4 bits]) := (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits]) at
***
Source file location of the OR operator via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val a = UInt(8 bits)
  val b = UInt(4 bits)
  b := a.resized
}
```

### 9.14.3 Operator example

The following code:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val a = UInt(8 bits)
  val b = UInt(4 bits)
  val result = a | b
}
```

will throw:

```
WIDTH MISMATCH on (UInt | UInt)[8 bits]
- Left operand : (toplevel/a : UInt[8 bits])
- Right operand : (toplevel/b : UInt[4 bits])
at
***
Source file location of the OR operator via the stack trace
***
```

A fix could be:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val a = UInt(8 bits)
  val b = UInt(4 bits)
  val result = a | (b.resized)
}
```

## 9.15 Introduction

The SpinalHDL compile will perform many checks on your design to be sure that the generated VHDL/Verilog will be safe for simulation and synthesis. Basically, it should not be possible to generate a broken VHDL/Verilog. There is a not exhaustive list of SpinalHDL checks :

- Assignment overlapping
- Clock crossing
- Hierarchy violation
- Combinatorial loops
- Latches
- Undriven signals

- Width mismatch
- Unreachable switch statements

On each SpinalHDL error report, you will find a stack trace which is really useful to accurately find out where the design error is. It could look overkill in a first look, but as soon you start to go further the traditional way of doing hardware description, it is really a helpful tool.





## OTHER LANGUAGE FEATURES

### 10.1 Utils

#### 10.1.1 General

Many tools and utilities are present in *spinal.lib* but some are already present in SpinalHDL Core.

Syntax	Return	Description
<code>widthOf(x : BitVector)</code>	Int	Return the width of a Bits/UInt/SInt signal
<code>log2Up(x : BigInt)</code>	Int	Return the number of bits needed to represent x states
<code>isPow2(x : BigInt)</code>	Boolean	Return true if x is a power of two
<code>roundUp(that : BigInt, by : BigInt)</code>	BigInt	Return the first by multiply from that (included)
<code>Cat(x : Data*)</code>	Bits	Concatenate all arguments, the first in MSB, the last in LSB

#### 10.1.2 Cloning hardware datatypes

You can clone a given hardware data type by using the `cloneOf(x)` function. It will return a new instance of the same Scala type and parameters.

For example :

```
def plusOne(value : UInt) : UInt = {
  //Will recreate a UInt with the same width than `value`
  val temp = cloneOf(value)
  temp := value + 1
  return temp
}

//treePlusOne will become a 8 bits value
val treePlusOne = plusOne(U(3,8 bits))
```

You can get more information about how hardware data types are managed [here](#)

---

**Note:** If you use the `cloneOf` function on a Bundle, this Bundle should be a case class or should override the `clone` function internally.

---

### 10.1.3 Passing a datatype as construction parameter

Many pieces of reusable hardware need to be parameterized by some data type. For example if you want to define a FIFO or a shift register, you need a parameter to specify which kind of payload you want for the component.

There are two similar ways to do this.

#### The old way

A good example of the old way to do that is in this definition of a ShiftRegister:

```
case class ShiftRegister[T <: Data](dataType: T, depth: Int) extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val input  = in (cloneOf(dataType))  
    val output = out(cloneOf(dataType))  
  }  
  // ...  
}
```

And here is how you can instantiate the component:

```
val shiftReg = ShiftRegister(Bits(32 bits), depth = 8)
```

As you can see, the raw hardware type is directly passed as a construction parameter. Then each time you want to create an new instance of that kind of hardware data type, you need to use the cloneOf(...) function. Doing things this way is not super safe as it's easy to forget to use cloneOf().

#### The safe way

An example of the safe way to pass a data type parameter is as follows:

```
case class ShiftRegister[T <: Data](dataType: HardType[T], depth: Int) extends Component  
↳ Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val input  = in (dataType())  
    val output = out(dataType())  
  }  
  // ...  
}
```

And here is how you instantiate the component (exactly the same as before):

```
val shiftReg = ShiftRegister(Bits(32 bits), depth = 8)
```

Notice how the example above uses a HardType wrapper around the raw data type T, which is kind of a blueprint definition of an hardware data type. This way of doing things is easier to use than the “old way”, because to create a new instance of the hardware data type you just need to call the apply function of that HardType (or in other words, just add parentheses after the parameter).

Additionally, this mechanism is completely transparent from the point of view of the user, as a hardware data type can be implicitly converted into an HardType.

### 10.1.4 Frequency and time

SpinalHDL HDL has a dedicated syntax to define frequency and time values:

```
val frequency = 100 MHz
val timeoutLimit = 3 ms
val period = 100 us

val periodCycles = frequency*period
val timeoutCycles = frequency*timeoutLimit
```

For time definitions you can use following postfixes to get a `TimeNumber` :

fs, ps, ns, us, ms, sec, mn, hr

For time definitions you can use following postfixes to get a `HertzNumber` :

Hz, KHz, MHz, GHz, THz

`TimeNumber` and `HertzNumber` are based on the `PhysicalNumber` class which uses scala `BigDecimal` to store numbers.

## 10.2 Assertions

In addition to scala run-time assertions, you can add hardware assertions using the following syntax:

```
assert(assertion : Bool,message : String = null,severity: AssertNodeSeverity =
Error)
```

Severity levels are:

Name	Description
NOTE	Used to report a informative message
WARNING	Used to report a unusual case
ERROR	Used to report an situation that should not happen
FAILURE	Used to report a fatal situation and close the simulation

One practical example could be to check that the valid signal of a handshake protocol never drops when ready is low:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val valid = RegInit(False)
  val ready = in Bool

  when(ready){
    valid := False
  }
  // some logic

  assert(
    assertion = !(valid.fall && !ready),
    message   = "Valid drop when ready was low",
    severity  = ERROR
  )
}
```

## 10.3 Formal

### 10.3.1 General

There is limited support for SystemVerilog Assertions.

You can add formal statement (assume, assert ecc..) in the Component definition, like the example below:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val ready = in Bool
    val valid = out Bool
  }
  val valid = RegInit(False)

  when(io.ready){
    valid := False
  }
  io.valid <> valid
  // some logic

  import spinal.core.GenerationFlags._
  import spinal.core.Formal._

  GenerationFlags.formal{
    when(initstate()) {
      assume(clockDomain.isResetActive)
      assume(io.ready === False)
    }.otherwise {
      assert(!(valid.fall && !io.ready))
    }
  }
}
```

To generate a design which includes the formal statements you can use `includeFormal`:

```
object MyToplevelSystemVerilogWithFormal{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    val config = SpinalConfig(defaultConfigForClockDomains = ↵
↵ClockDomainConfig(resetKind = SYNC, resetActiveLevel=HIGH))
    config.includeFormal.generateSystemVerilog(new TopLevel())
  }
}
```

### 10.3.2 Supported features

Syntax	Returns	creates in SystemVerilog
<code>assert()</code>		<code>assert()</code>
<code>cover()</code>		<code>cover()</code>
<code>past(that : T, delay : Int)</code> <code>past(that : T)</code>	T	<code>past(that)</code>
<code>rose(that : Bool)</code>	Bool	<code>rose(that)</code>
<code>fell(that : Bool)</code>	Bool	<code>fell(that)</code>
<code>changed(that : Bool)</code>	Bool	<code>changed(that)</code>
<code>stable(that : Bool)</code>	Bool	<code>stable(that)</code>
<code>initstate()</code>	Bool	<code>\$initstate()</code>

### 10.3.3 Limitations

No support for unclocked assertions. Everything that is described in `GenerationFlags.formal` will be generated in a clock process.

## 10.4 Analog and inout

### 10.4.1 Introduction

You can define native tristate signals by using the Analog/inout features. These features were added for the following reasons:

- Being able to add native tristate signals to the toplevel (it avoid having to manually wrap them with some hand written VHDL/Verilog)
- Allowing the definition of blackbox which contains some inout pins
- Being able to connect a blackbox inout through the hierarchy to a toplevel inout pin.

As those feature were only added for convenience, do not do other fancy stuff with it and if you want to model a component like an memory mapped GPIO peripheral, please use the `TriState/TriStateArray` bundles from the `spinal lib`, which keep the true nature of the tristate driver.

### 10.4.2 Analog

Analog is the keyword which allows a signal to be defined as something ... analog, which in the digital world could mean '0', '1', or 'Z'.

For instance :

```
case class SdramInterface(g : SdramLayout) extends Bundle{
  val DQ    = Analog(Bits(g.dataWidth bits)) //Bidirectional data bus
  val DQM   = Bits(g.bytePerWord bits)
  val ADDR  = Bits(g.chipAddressWidth bits)
  val BA    = Bits(g.bankWidth bits)
  val CKE, CSn, CASn, RASn, WEn = Bool
}
```

### 10.4.3 inout

`inout` is the keyword which allows you to set an Analog signal as a component inout.

For instance:

```
case class SdramInterface(g : SdramLayout) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  val DQ    = Analog(Bits(g.dataWidth bits)) //Bidirectional data bus
  val DQM   = Bits(g.bytePerWord bits)
  val ADDR  = Bits(g.chipAddressWidth bits)
  val BA    = Bits(g.bankWidth bits)
  val CKE, CSn, CASn, RASn, WEn = Bool

  override def asMaster() : Unit = {
    out(ADDR,BA,CASn,CKE,CSn,DQM,RASn,WEn)
    inout(DQ) //Set the Analog DQ as an inout of the component
  }
}
```

### 10.4.4 InOutWrapper

`InOutWrapper` is a tool which allows you to transform all master `TriState`/`TriStateArray`/`ReadableOpenDrain` bundles of a component into native `inout(Analog(...))` signals. It allow you to keep all your hardware description without any `Analog`/`inout` things, and then transform the toplevel to make it synthesis ready.

For instance:

```
case class Apb3Gpio(gpioWidth : Int) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val gpio = master(TriStateArray(gpioWidth bits))
    val apb  = slave(Apb3(Apb3Gpio.getApb3Config()))
  }
  ...
}

SpinalVhdl(InOutWrapper(Apb3Gpio(32)))
```

Will generate:

```
entity Apb3Gpio is
  port(
    io_gpio : inout std_logic_vector(31 downto 0); -- This io_gpio was originally a
    ↪ TriStateArray Bundle
    io_apb_PADDR : in unsigned(3 downto 0);
    io_apb_PSEL : in std_logic_vector(0 downto 0);
    io_apb_PENABLE : in std_logic;
    io_apb_PREADY : out std_logic;
    io_apb_PWRITE : in std_logic;
    io_apb_PWDATA : in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_apb_PRDATA : out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_apb_PSLVERROR : out std_logic;
    clk : in std_logic;
    reset : in std_logic
  );
end Apb3Gpio;
```

Instead of:

```

entity Apb3Gpio is
  port(
    io_gpio_read : in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_gpio_write : out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_gpio_writeEnable : out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_apb_PADDR : in unsigned(3 downto 0);
    io_apb_PSEL : in std_logic_vector(0 downto 0);
    io_apb_PENABLE : in std_logic;
    io_apb_PREADY : out std_logic;
    io_apb_PWRITE : in std_logic;
    io_apb_PWDATA : in std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_apb_PRDATA : out std_logic_vector(31 downto 0);
    io_apb_PSLVERROR : out std_logic;
    clk : in std_logic;
    reset : in std_logic
  );
end Apb3Gpio;

```

## 10.5 VHDL and Verilog generation

### 10.5.1 Generate VHDL and Verilog from a SpinalHDL Component

To generate the VHDL from a SpinalHDL component you just need to call `SpinalVhdl(new YourComponent)` in a Scala main.

Generating Verilog is exactly the same, but with `SpinalVerilog` in place of `SpinalVhdl`

```

import spinal.core._

//A simple component definition
class MyTopLevel extends Component {
  //Define some input/output. Bundle like a VHDL record or a verilog struct.
  val io = new Bundle {
    val a = in Bool
    val b = in Bool
    val c = out Bool
  }

  //Define some asynchronous logic
  io.c := io.a & io.b
}

//This is the main that generates the VHDL and the Verilog corresponding to MyTopLevel
object MyMain {
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new MyTopLevel)
    SpinalVerilog(new MyTopLevel)
  }
}

```

**Important:** `SpinalVhdl` and `SpinalVerilog` may need to create multiple instance of your component class, therefore the first argument is not a Component reference but a function that return a new component.

**Important:** SpinalVerilog implementation began the 5th of June 2016. This backend successfully passes the same regression tests as the VHDL one (RISCV CPU, Multicore and pipelined mandelbrot, UART RX/TX, Single clock fifo, Dual clock fifo, Gray counter, ..). However, if you have any issues with this new backend, please make a git issue describing the problem.

### Parametrization from Scala

Argument name	Type	Default	Description
mode	SpinalMode	null	Set the SpinalHDL hdl generation mode. Can be set to VHDL or Verilog
default-ConfigFor-ClockDomains	ClockDomainConfig	RisingEdgeClock AsynchronousReset ResetActiveHigh ClockEnableActiveHigh	Set the clock configuration that will be used as the default value for all new ClockDomain.
onlyStd-LogicVectorAtTopLevelIo	Boolean	false	Change all unsigned/signed toplevel io into std_logic_vector.
default-ClockDomainFrequency	IClockDomainFrequency	Unknown-Frequency	Default clock frequency
targetDirectory	String	Current directory	Directory where files are generated

And here is the syntax to specify them:

```
SpinalConfig(mode = VHDL, targetDirectory="temp/myDesign").generate(new UartCtrl)

// Or for Verilog in a more scalable formatting :
SpinalConfig(
  mode = Verilog,
  targetDirectory="temp/myDesign"
).generate(new UartCtrl)
```



## Parametrization from shell

You can also specify generation parameters by using command line arguments.

```
def main(args: Array[String]): Unit = {
  SpinalConfig.shell(args)(new UartCtrl)
}
```

The syntax for command line arguments is:

```
Usage: SpinalCore [options]

--vhdl
    Select the VHDL mode
--verilog
    Select the Verilog mode
-d | --debug
    Enter in debug mode directly
-o <value> | --targetDirectory <value>
    Set the target directory
```

## 10.5.2 Generated VHDL and Verilog

The way how a SpinalHDL RTL description is translated into VHDL and Verilog is important :

- Names in Scala are preserved in VHDL and Verilog.
- Component hierarchy in Scala is preserved in VHDL and Verilog.
- `when` statements in Scala are emitted as `if` statements in VHDL and Verilog
- `switch` statements in Scala are emitted as `case` statements in VHDL and Verilog in all standard cases

## Organization

When you use the VHDL generator, all modules are generated into a single file which contain three sections:

1. A package that contains the definition of all Enums
2. A package that contains functions used by architectures
3. All components needed by your design

When you use the Verilog generation, all modules are generated into a single file which contains two sections:

1. All enumeration definitions used
2. All modules needed by your design

## Combinatorial logic

Scala:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val cond      = in Bool
    val value      = in UInt(4 bits)
    val withoutProcess = out UInt(4 bits)
    val withProcess  = out UInt(4 bits)
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

io.withoutProcess := io.value
io.withProcess := 0
when(io.cond){
  switch(io.value){
    is(U"0000"){
      io.withProcess := 8
    }
    is(U"0001"){
      io.withProcess := 9
    }
    default{
      io.withProcess := io.value+1
    }
  }
}
}

```

VHDL:

```

entity TopLevel is
  port(
    io_cond : in std_logic;
    io_value : in unsigned(3 downto 0);
    io_withoutProcess : out unsigned(3 downto 0);
    io_withProcess : out unsigned(3 downto 0)
  );
end TopLevel;

architecture arch of TopLevel is
begin
  io_withoutProcess <= io_value;
  process(io_cond,io_value)
  begin
    io_withProcess <= pkg_unsigned("0000");
    if io_cond = '1' then
      case io_value is
        when pkg_unsigned("0000") =>
          io_withProcess <= pkg_unsigned("1000");
        when pkg_unsigned("0001") =>
          io_withProcess <= pkg_unsigned("1001");
        when others =>
          io_withProcess <= (io_value + pkg_unsigned("0001"));
        end case;
      end if;
    end process;
  end arch;

```

## Sequential Logic

Scala:

```
class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val cond    = in Bool
    val value   = in UInt(4 bit)
    val resultA = out UInt(4 bit)
    val resultB = out UInt(4 bit)
  }

  val regWithReset = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(0)
  val regWithoutReset = Reg(UInt(4 bits))

  regWithReset := io.value
  regWithoutReset := 0
  when(io.cond){
    regWithoutReset := io.value
  }

  io.resultA := regWithReset
  io.resultB := regWithoutReset
}
```

VHDL:

```
entity TopLevel is
  port(
    io_cond : in std_logic;
    io_value : in unsigned(3 downto 0);
    io_resultA : out unsigned(3 downto 0);
    io_resultB : out unsigned(3 downto 0);
    clk : in std_logic;
    reset : in std_logic
  );
end TopLevel;

architecture arch of TopLevel is

  signal regWithReset : unsigned(3 downto 0);
  signal regWithoutReset : unsigned(3 downto 0);
begin
  io_resultA <= regWithReset;
  io_resultB <= regWithoutReset;
  process(clk,reset)
  begin
    if reset = '1' then
      regWithReset <= pkg_unsigned("0000");
    elsif rising_edge(clk) then
      regWithReset <= io_value;
    end if;
  end process;

  process(clk)
  begin
    if rising_edge(clk) then
      regWithoutReset <= pkg_unsigned("0000");
    end if;
  end process;
end arch;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    if io_cond = '1' then
        regWithoutReset <= io_value;
    end if;
end if;
end process;
end arch;

```

### 10.5.3 VHDL and Verilog attributes

In some situations, it is useful to give attributes to some signals of a given design to modify synthesis. To do that, you can call the following functions on any signals or memories in the design:

Syntax	Description
<code>addAttribute(name)</code>	Add a boolean attribute with the given name set to true
<code>addAttribute(name,value)</code>	Add a string attribute with the given name set to value

Example:

```

val pcPlus4 = pc + 4
pcPlus4.addAttribute("keep")

```

Produced declaration in VHDL:

```

attribute keep : boolean;
signal pcPlus4 : unsigned(31 downto 0);
attribute keep of pcPlus4: signal is true;

```

Produced declaration in Verilog:

```

(* keep *) wire [31:0] pcPlus4;

```

## 10.6 Introduction

### 10.6.1 Introduction

The core of the language defines the syntax that provides many features :

- Types / Literals
- Register / Clock domains
- Component / Area
- RAM / ROM
- When / Switch / Mux
- BlackBox (to integrate VHDL or Verilog IP inside Spinal)
- SpinalHDL to VHDL converter

Then, by using these features, you can of course define digital hardware, but also build powerful libraries and abstractions. It's one of the major advantages of SpinalHDL over other commonly used HDLs, because you can extend the language without having knowledge about the compiler.

One good example of this is the *SpinalHDL lib* which adds many utilities, tools, buses and methodologies.

To use features introduced in the following chapter you need to `import spinal.core._` in your sources.



## LIBRARIES

### 11.1 Utils

Some utils are also present in *spinal.core*

## 11.1.1 State less utilities

Syntax	Return	Description
<code>toGray(x : UInt)</code>	Bits	Return the gray value converted from <b>x</b> (UInt)
<code>fromGray(x : Bits)</code>	UInt	Return the UInt value converted value from <b>x</b> (gray)
<code>Reverse(x : T)</code>	T	Flip all bits (lsb + n -> msb - n)
<code>OHToUInt(x : Seq[Bool])</code> <code>OHToUInt(x : BitVector)</code>	UInt	Return the index of the single bit set (one hot) in <b>x</b>
<code>CountOne(x : Seq[Bool])</code> <code>CountOne(x : BitVector)</code>	UInt	Return the number of bit set in <b>x</b>
<code>MajorityVote(x : Seq[Bool])</code> <code>MajorityVote(x : BitVector)</code>	Bool	Return True if the number of bit set is > x.size / 2
<code>EndiannessSwap(that: T[, base:BitCount])</code>	T	Big-Endian <-> Little-Endian
<code>OHMasking.first(x : Bits)</code>	Bits	Apply a mask on x to only keep the first bit set
<code>OHMasking.last(x : Bits)</code>	Bits	Apply a mask on x to only keep the last bit set
<code>OHMasking.roundRobin(</code> <code>requests : Bits,</code> <code>ohPriority : Bits</code> <code>)</code>	Bits	Apply a mask on x to only keep the bit set from <b>requests</b> . it start looking in <b>requests</b> from the <b>ohPriority</b> position. For example if <b>requests</b> is "1001" and <b>ohPriority</b> is "0010", the <b>roundRobin</b> function will start looking in <i>requests</i> from its second bit and will return "1000".
<code>MuxOH (</code> <code>oneHot : IndexedSeq[Bool],</code> <code>inputs : Iterable[T]</code> <code>)</code>	T	Returns the muxed T from the <b>inputs</b> based on the <b>oneHot</b> vector.



### 11.1.2 State full utilities

Syntax	Return	Description
Delay(that: T, cycleCount: Int)	T	Return that delayed by cycleCount cycles
History(that: T, length: Int[, when : Bool])	List[T]	Return a Vec of length elements The first element is that, the last one is that delayed by length-1 The internal shift register sample when when is asserted
BufferCC(input : T)	T	Return the input signal synchronized with the current clock domain by using 2 flip flop

#### Counter

The Counter tool can be used to easily instantiate an hardware counter.

Instanciation syntax	Notes
Counter(start: BigInt, end: BigInt[, inc : Bool])	
Counter(range : Ranget[, inc : Bool])	Compatible with the x to y x until y syntaxes
Counter(stateCount: BigInt[, inc : Bool])	Start at zero and finish at stateCount - 1
Counter(bitCount: BitCount[, inc : Bool])	Start at zero and finish at (1 << bitCount) - 1

There is an example of different syntaxes which could be used with the Counter tool

```
val counter = Counter(2 to 9) //Create a counter of 10 states (2 to 9)
counter.clear()               //When called it ask to reset the counter.
counter.increment()           //When called it ask to increment the counter.
counter.value                  //current value
counter.valueNext              //Next value
counter.willOverflow           //Flag that indicate if the counter overflow this cycle
counter.willOverflowIfInc      //Flag that indicate if the counter overflow this cycle if
↳ an increment is done
when(counter === 5){ ... }
```

When a Counter overflow its end value, it restart to its start value.

**Note:** Currently, only up counter are supported.

#### Timeout

The Timeout tool can be used to easily instantiate an hardware timeout.

Instanciation syntax	Notes
Timeout(cycles : BigInt)	Tick after cycles clocks
Timeout(time : TimeNumber)	Tick after a time duration
Timeout(frequency : HertzNumber)	Tick at an frequency rate

There is an example of different syntaxes which could be used with the Counter tool

```
val timeout = Timeout(10 ms) //Timeout who tick after 10 ms
when(timeout){                //Check if the timeout has tick
    timeout.clear()           //Ask the timeout to clear its flag
}
```

---

**Note:** If you instantiate an `Timeout` with an time or frequency setup, the implicit `ClockDomain` should have an frequency setting.

---

## ResetCtrl

The `ResetCtrl` provide some utilities to manage resets.

### asyncAssertSyncDeassert

You can filter an asynchronous reset by using an asynchronously asserted synchronously deasserted logic. To do it you can use the `ResetCtrl.asyncAssertSyncDeassert` function which will return you the filtered value.

Argument name	Type	Description
input	Bool	Signal that should be filtered
clockDomain	ClockDomain	ClockDomain which will use the filtered value
inputPolarity	Polarity	HIGH/LOW (default=HIGH)
outputPolarity	Polarity	HIGH/LOW (default=clockDomain.config.resetActiveLevel)
bufferDepth	Int	Number of register stages used to avoid metastability (default=2)

There is also an `ResetCtrl.asyncAssertSyncDeassertDrive` version of tool which directly assign the `clockDomain` reset with the filtered value.

### 11.1.3 Special utilities

Syntax	Return	Description
LatencyAnalysis(paths : Node*)	Int	Return the shortest path,in term of cycle, that travel through all nodes, from the first one to the last one

## 11.2 Stream

### 11.2.1 Specification

The `Stream` interface is a simple handshake protocol to carry payload.

It could be used for example to push and pop elements into a FIFO, send requests to a UART controller, etc.

Sig-nal	Type	Driver	Description	Don't care when
valid	Bool	Master	When high => payload present on the interface	
ready	Bool	Slave	When low => transaction are not consumed by the slave	valid is low
pay-load	T	Master	Content of the transaction	valid is low



There is some examples of usage in SpinalHDL :

```

class StreamFifo[T <: Data](dataType: T, depth: Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val push = slave Stream (dataType)
    val pop = master Stream (dataType)
  }
  ...
}

class StreamArbiter[T <: Data](dataType: T, portCount: Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val inputs = Vec(slave Stream (dataType), portCount)
    val output = master Stream (dataType)
  }
  ...
}

```

**Note:** Each slave can or can't allow the payload to change when valid is high and ready is low. For examples:

- An priority arbiter without lock logic can switch from one input to the other (which will change the payload).
- An UART controller could directly use the write port to drive UART pins and only consume the transaction at the end of the transmission. Be careful with that.



## 11.2.2 Functions

Syntax	Description	Re- turn	La- tency
Stream(type : Data)	Create a Stream of a given type	Stream[T]	
master/slave Stream(type : Data)	Create a Stream of a given type Initialized with corresponding in/out setup	Stream[T]	
x.fire	Return True when a transaction is consumed on the bus (valid && ready)	Bool	
x.isStall	Return True when a transaction is stall on the bus (valid && ! ready)	Bool	
x.queue(size:Int)	Return a Stream connected to x through a FIFO	Stream[T]	2
x.m2sPipe() x.stage()	Return a Stream driven by x through a register stage that cut valid/payload paths Cost = (payload width + 1) flop flop	Stream[T]	1
x.s2mPipe()	Return a Stream driven by x ready paths is cut by a register stage Cost = payload width * (mux2 + 1 flip flop)	Stream[T]	0
x.halfPipe()	Return a Stream driven by x valid/ready/payload paths are cut by some register Cost = (payload width + 2) flip flop, bandwidth divided by two	Stream[T]	1
x << y y >> x	Connect y to x		0
x <-< y y >-> x	Connect y to x through a m2sPipe		1
x </< y y >/> x	Connect y to x through a s2mPipe		0
x <-/< y y >/-> x	Connect y to x through s2mPipe().m2sPipe() Which imply no combinatorial path between x and y		1
x.haltWhen(cond : Bool)		Stream[T]	0
<b>11.2. Stream</b>	Return a Stream connected to x Halted when cond is true		<b>135</b>
x.throwWhen(cond : Bool)		Stream[T]	0

The following code will create this logic :

```
source.throwWhen(source.payload.isBlack)
```



```
case class RGB(channelWidth : Int) extends Bundle{
  val red   = UInt(channelWidth bit)
  val green = UInt(channelWidth bit)
  val blue  = UInt(channelWidth bit)

  def isBlack : Bool = red === 0 && green === 0 && blue === 0
}

val source = Stream(RGB(8))
val sink   = Stream(RGB(8))
sink <-< source.throwWhen(source.payload.isBlack)
```

### 11.2.3 Utils

There is many utils that you can use in your design in conjunction with the Stream bus, This chapter will document them.

#### StreamFifo

On each stream you can call the `.queue(size)` to get a buffered stream. But you can also instantiate the FIFO component itself :

```
val streamA, streamB = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
//...
val myFifo = StreamFifo(
  dataType = Bits(8 bits),
  depth    = 128
)
myFifo.io.push <-< streamA
myFifo.io.pop  >> streamB
```

parameter name	Type	Description
dataType	T	Payload data type
depth	Int	Size of the memory used to store elements

io name	Type	Description
push	Stream[T]	Used to push elements
pop	Stream[T]	Used to pop elements
flush	Bool	Used to remove all elements inside the FIFO
occupancy	UInt of log2Up(depth + 1) bits	Indicate the internal memory occupancy

### StreamFifoCC

You can instantiate the dual clock domain version of the fifo by the following way :

```

val clockA = ClockDomain(???)
val clockB = ClockDomain(???)
val streamA, streamB = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
//...
val myFifo = StreamFifoCC(
  dataType = Bits(8 bits),
  depth    = 128,
  pushClock = clockA,
  popClock  = clockB
)
myFifo.io.push << streamA
myFifo.io.pop  >> streamB

```

parameter name	Type	Description
dataType	T	Payload data type
depth	Int	Size of the memory used to store elements
pushClock	ClockDomain	Clock domain used by the push side
popClock	ClockDomain	Clock domain used by the pop side

io name	Type	Description
push	Stream[T]	Used to push elements
pop	Stream[T]	Used to pop elements
pushOccupancy	UInt of log2Up(depth + 1) bits	Indicate the internal memory occupancy (from the push side perspective)
popOccupancy	UInt of log2Up(depth + 1) bits	Indicate the internal memory occupancy (from the pop side perspective)

## StreamCCByToggle

Component that provide a Stream cross clock domain bridge based on toggling signals.

This way of doing cross clock domain bridge is characterized by a small area usage but also a low bandwidth.

```
val clockA = ClockDomain(???)
val clockB = ClockDomain(???)
val streamA, streamB = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
//...
val bridge = StreamCCByToggle(
  dataType    = Bits(8 bits),
  inputClock  = clockA,
  outputClock = clockB
)
bridge.io.input  << streamA
bridge.io.output >> streamB
```

parameter name	Type	Description
dataType	T	Payload data type
inputClock	ClockDomain	Clock domain used by the push side
outputClock	ClockDomain	Clock domain used by the pop side

io name	Type	Description
input	Stream[T]	Used to push elements
output	Stream[T]	Used to pop elements

But you can also use a this shorter syntax which directly return you the cross clocked stream:

```
val clockA = ClockDomain(???)
val clockB = ClockDomain(???)
val streamA = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
val streamB = StreamCCByToggle(
  input      = streamA,
  inputClock = clockA,
  outputClock = clockB
)
```

## StreamArbiter

When you have multiple Streams and you want to arbitrate them to drive a single one, you can use the StreamArbiterFactory.

```
val streamA, streamB, streamC = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
val arbitredABC = StreamArbiterFactory.roundRobin.onArgs(streamA, streamB, streamC)

val streamD, streamE, streamF = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
val arbitredDEF = StreamArbiterFactory.lowerFirst.noLock.onArgs(streamD, streamE, ↵
↵streamF)
```



Arbitration functions	Description
lowerFirst	Lower port have priority over higher port
roundRobin	Fair round robin arbitration
sequentialOrder	Could be used to retrieve transaction in a sequencial order First transaction should come from port zero, then from port one, ...

Lock functions	Description
noLock	The port selection could change every cycle, even if the transaction on the selected port is not consumed.
transaction-Lock	The port selection is locked until the transaction on the selected port is consumed.
fragmentLock	Could be used to arbitrate Stream[Flow[T]]. In this mode, the port selection is locked until the selected port finish is burst (last=True).

Generation functions	Return
on(inputs : Seq[Stream[T]])	Stream[T]
onArgs(inputs : Stream[T]*)	Stream[T]

## StreamFork

This utile take its input stream and duplicate it outputCount times.

```
val inputStream = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
val dispatchedStreams = StreamDispatcherSequencial(
  input = inputStream,
  outputCount = 3
)
```

## StreamDispatcherSequencial

This utile take its input stream and route it to outputCount stream in a sequential order.

```
val inputStream = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
val dispatchedStreams = StreamDispatcherSequencial(
  input = inputStream,
  outputCount = 3
)
```

## 11.3 Flow

### 11.3.1 Specification

The Flow interface is a simple valid/payload protocol which mean the slave can't halt the bus.

It could be used, for example, to represent data coming from an UART controller, requests to write an on-chip memory, etc.

Signal	Type	Driver	Description	Don't care when
valid	Bool	Master	When high => payload present on the interface	
payload	T	Master	Content of the transaction	valid is low

### 11.3.2 Functions

Syntax	Description	Return	Latency
Flow(type : Data)	Create a Flow of a given type	Flow[T]	
master/slave Flow(type : Data)	Create a Flow of a given type Initialized with corresponding in/out setup	Flow[T]	
x.m2sPipe()	Return a Flow driven by x through a register stage that cut valid/payload paths	Flow[T]	1
x << y y >> x	Connect y to x		0
x <-< y y >-> x	Connect y to x through a m2sPipe		1
x.throw : Bool)	When(cond : Bool) Return a Flow connected to x When cond is high, transaction are dropped	Flow[T]	0
x.toReg()	Return a register which is loaded with payload when valid is high	T	

## 11.4 Fragment

### 11.4.1 Specification

The **Fragment** bundle is the concept of transmitting a “big” thing by using multiple “small” fragments. For examples :

- A picture transmitted with width\*height transaction on a `Stream[Fragment[Pixel]]`
- An UART packet received from an controller without flow control could be transmitted on a `Flow[Fragment[Bits]]`
- An AXI read burst could be carried by an `Stream[Fragment[AxiReadResponse]]`

Signals defined by the **Fragment** bundle are :

Signal	Type	Driver	Description
fragment	T	Master	The “payload” of the current transaction
last	Bool	Master	High when the fragment is the last of the current packet

As you can see with this specification and precedent example, the **Fragment** concept doesn't specify how transaction are transmitted (You can use `Stream`, `Flow` or any other communication protocol). It only add enough information (`last`) to know if the current transaction is the first one, the last one or one in the middle of a given packet.

---

**Note:** The protocol didn't carry a 'first' bit because it can be generated at any place by doing 'RegNextWhen(bus.last, bus.fire) init(True)'

---

### 11.4.2 Functions

For `Stream[Fragment[T]]` and `Flow[Fragment[T]]`, following function are presents :

Syntax	Return	Description
<code>x.first</code>	Bool	Return True when the next or the current transaction is/would be the first of a packet
<code>x.tail</code>	Bool	Return True when the next or the current transaction is/would be not the first of a packet
<code>x.isFirst</code>	Bool	Return True when an transaction is present and is the first of a packet
<code>x.isTail</code>	Bool	Return True when an transaction is present and is the not the first/last of a packet
<code>x.isLast</code>	Bool	Return True when an transaction is present and is the last of a packet

For `Stream[Fragment[T]]`, following function are also accessible :

Syntax	Return	Description
<code>x.insertHeader(header : T)</code>	<code>Stream[Fragment[T]]</code>	Add the header to each packet on <code>x</code> and return the resulting bus

## 11.5 State machine

### 11.5.1 Introduction

In SpinalHDL you can define your state machine like in VHDL/Verilog, by using enumerations and switch cases statements. But in SpinalHDL you can also use a dedicated syntax.

The following state machine is implemented in following examples :



Style A :

```

import spinal.lib.fsm._

class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle{
    val result = out Bool
  }

  val fsm = new StateMachine{
    val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init (0)
    io.result := False

    val stateA : State = new State with EntryPoint{
      whenIsActive (goto(stateB))
    }
    val stateB : State = new State{
      onEntry(counter := 0)
      whenIsActive {
        counter := counter + 1
        when(counter === 4){
          goto(stateC)
        }
      }
      onExit(io.result := True)
    }
    val stateC : State = new State{
      whenIsActive (goto(stateA))
    }
  }
}
  
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    }
  }
}

```

Style B :

```

import spinal.lib.fsm._

class TopLevel extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle{
    val result = out Bool
  }

  val fsm = new StateMachine{
    val stateA = new State with EntryPoint
    val stateB = new State
    val stateC = new State

    val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init (0)
    io.result := False

    stateA
      .whenIsActive (goto(stateB))

    stateB
      .onEntry(counter := 0)
      .whenIsActive {
        counter := counter + 1
        when(counter === 4){
          goto(stateC)
        }
      }
      .onExit(io.result := True)

    stateC
      .whenIsActive (goto(stateA))
  }
}

```

### 11.5.2 StateMachine

StateMachine is the base class that will manage the logic of your FSM.

```

val myFsm = new StateMachine{
  // Here will come states definition
}

```

The StateMachine class also provide some utils :

Name	Return	Description
isActive(state)	Bool	Return True when the state machine is in the given state
isEntering(state)	Bool	Return True when the state machine is entering the given state

### 11.5.3 States

There is multiple kinds of states that you can use.

- State (the base one)
- StateDelay
- StateFsm
- StateParallelFsm

In each of them you have access the following utilities :

Name	Description
<pre>onEntry{     yourStatements }</pre>	yourStatements is executed the cycle before entering the state
<pre>onExit{     yourStatements }</pre>	yourStatements is executed when the state machine will be in another state the next cycle
<pre>whenIsActive{     yourStatements }</pre>	yourStatements is executed when the state machine is in the state
<pre>whenIsNext{     yourStatements }</pre>	yourStatements is executed when the state machine will be in the state the next cycle
goto(nextState)	Set the state of the state machine by nextState
exit()	Set the state of the state machine to the boot one

For example, the following state could be defined in SpinalHDL by using the following syntax :



```

val stateB : State = new State{
  onEntry(counter := 0)
  whenIsActive {
    counter := counter + 1
    when(counter === 4){
      goto(stateC)
    }
  }
  onExit(io.result := True)
}

```

You can also define your state as the entry point of the state machine by extends the EntryPoint trait.

```

val stateA: State = new State with EntryPoint {
  whenIsActive {
    goto(stateB)
  }
}

```

### StateDelay

StateDelay allow you to create a state which wait a fixed number of cycles before executing statments in your whenCompleted{...}. The standard way to write it is :

```

val stateG : State = new StateDelay(cyclesCount=40){
  whenCompleted{
    goto(stateH)
  }
}

```

But you can also write it like that :

```

val stateG : State = new StateDelay(40){whenCompleted(goto(stateH))}

```

### StateFsm

StateFsm Allow you to describe a state which contains a nested state machine. When the nested state machine is done, your statments in whenCompleted{...} are executed.

There is an example of StateFsm definition :

```

val stateC = new StateFsm(fsm=internalFsm()){
  whenCompleted{
    goto(stateD)
  }
}

```

As you can see in the precedent code, it use a internalFsm function to create the inner state machine. There is an example of definition bellow :

```

def internalFsm() = new StateMachine {
  val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init (0)

  val stateA: State = new State with EntryPoint {
    whenIsActive {
      goto(stateB)
    }
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    }  
  }  
  
  val stateB: State = new State {  
    onEntry (counter := 0)  
    whenIsActive {  
      when(counter === 4) {  
        exit()  
      }  
      counter := counter + 1  
    }  
  }  
}
```

In the precedent example, the `exit()` call will make the state machine jump to the boot state (a internal hidden state). This notify the StateFsm about the completion of the inner state machine.

### StateParallelFsm

This state is able to handle multiple nested state machines. When all nested state machine are done, your statments in `whenCompleted{...}` are executed.

There is an example of declaration :

```
val stateD = new StateParallelFsm (internalFsmA(), internalFsmB()){  
  whenCompleted{  
    goto(stateE)  
  }  
}
```

## 11.6 VexRiscv (RV32IM CPU)

VexRiscv is an fpga friendly RISC-V ISA CPU implementation with following features :

- RV32IM instruction set
- Pipelined on 5 stages (Fetch, Decode, Execute, Memory, WriteBack)
- 1.44 DMIPS/Mhz when all features are enabled
- Optimized for FPGA
- Optional MUL/DIV extension
- Optional instruction and data caches
- Optional MMU
- Optional debug extension allowing eclipse debugging via an GDB >> openOCD >> JTAG connection
- Optional interrupts and exception handling with the Machine and the User mode from the riscv-privileged-v1.9.1 spec.
- Two implementation of shift instructions, Single cycle / shiftNumber cycles
- Each stage could have bypass or interlock hazard logic
- FreeRTOS port <https://github.com/Dolu1990/FreeRTOS-RISCV>

Much more information there : <https://github.com/SpinalHDL/VexRiscv>



## 11.7 Bus Slave Factory

### 11.7.1 Introduction

In many situation it's needed to implement a bus register bank. The `BusSlaveFactory` is a tool that provide an abstract and smooth way to define them.

To see capabilities of the tool, an simple example use the `Apb3SlaveFactory` variation to implement an *memory mapped UART*. There is also another example with an *Timer* which contain a memory mapping function.

You can find more documentation about the internal implementation of the `BusSlaveFactory` tool *there*

### 11.7.2 Functionality

Currently there is three implementation of the `BusSlaveFactory` tool : APB3, AXI-lite 3 and Avalon.

Each implementation of that tool take as argument one instance of the corresponding bus and then offer following functions to map your hardware into the memory mapping :

Name	Re- turn	Description
busDataWidth	Int	Return the data width of the bus
read(that,address,bitOffset)		When the bus read the address, fill the response with that at bitOffset
write(that,address,bitOffset)		When the bus write the address, assign that with bus's data from bitOffset
on-Write(address)(doThat)		Call doThat when a write transaction occur on address
on-Read(address)(doThat)		Call doThat when a read transaction occur on address
nonStop-Write(that,bitOffset)		Permanently assign that by the bus write data from bitOffset
readAnd-Write(that,address,bitOffset)		Make that readable and writable at address and placed at bitOffset in the word
readMulti-Word(that,address)		Create the memory mapping to read that from 'address'. If that is bigger than one word it extends the register on followings addresses
writeMulti-Word(that,address)		Create the memory mapping to write that at 'address'. If that is bigger than one word it extends the register on followings addresses
createWriteOnly(dataType,address,bitOffset)	T	Create a write only register of type dataType at address and placed at bitOffset
createRead-Write(dataType,address,bitOffset)	T	Create a read write register of type dataType at address and placed at bitOffset
create-AndDrive-Flow(dataType,address,bitOffset)	Flow[T]	Create a writable Flow register of type dataType at address and placed at bitOffset in the word
drive(that,address,bitOffset)		Drive that with a register writable at address placed at bitOffset in the word
driveAndRead(that,address,bitOffset)		Drive that with a register writable and readable at address placed at bitOffset in the word
drive-Flow(that,address,bitOffset)		Emit on that a transaction when a write happen at address by using data placed at bitOffset in the word
readStreamNonBlocking(that, address, validBitOffset, payloadBitOffset)		Read that and consume the transaction when a read happen at address. valid <= validBitOffset bit payload <= payloadBitOffset+widthOf(payload) downto payloadBitOffset
doBitsAccumulationAndClearOnRead(that, address, bitOffset)		Instantiate an internal register which at each cycle do : reg := reg   that Then when a read occur, the register is cleared. This register is readable at address and placed at bitOffset in the word

## 11.8 Bus

### 11.8.1 AHB-Lite3

#### Configuration and instantiation

First each time you want to create a AHB-Lite3 bus, you will need a configuration object. This configuration object is an `AhbLite3Config` and has following arguments :

Parameter name	Type	Default	Description
<code>addressWidth</code>	<code>Int</code>		Width of HADDR (byte granularity)
<code>dataWidth</code>	<code>Int</code>		Width of HWDATA and HRDATA

There is in short how the AHB-Lite3 bus is defined in the SpinalHDL library :

```
case class AhbLite3(config: AhbLite3Config) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  // Address and control
  val HADDR = UInt(config.addressWidth bits)
  val HSEL = Bool
  val HREADY = Bool
  val HWRITE = Bool
  val HSIZE = Bits(3 bits)
  val HBURST = Bits(3 bits)
  val HPROT = Bits(4 bits)
  val HTRANS = Bits(2 bits)
  val HMASTLOCK = Bool

  // Data
  val HWDATA = Bits(config.dataWidth bits)
  val HRDATA = Bits(config.dataWidth bits)

  // Transfer response
  val HREADYOUT = Bool
  val HRESP = Bool

  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    out(HADDR, HWRITE, HSIZE, HBURST, HPROT, HTRANS, HMASTLOCK, HWDATA, HREADY, HSEL)
    in(HREADYOUT, HRESP, HRDATA)
  }
}
```

There is a short example of usage :

```
val ahbConfig = AhbLite3Config(
  addressWidth = 12,
  dataWidth    = 32
)
val ahbX = AhbLite3(ahbConfig)
val ahbY = AhbLite3(ahbConfig)

when(ahbY.HSEL){
  //...
}
```

## Variations

There is an AhbLite3Master variation. The only difference is the absence of the HREADYOUT signal. This variation should only be used by masters while the interconnect and slaves use AhbLite3.

## 11.8.2 Apb3

### Introduction

The AMBA3-APB bus is commonly used to interface low bandwidth peripherals.

### Configuration and instantiation

First each time you want to create a APB3 bus, you will need a configuration object. This configuration object is an Apb3Config and has following arguments :

Parameter name	Type	Default	Description
addressWidth	Int		Width of PADDR (byte granularity)
dataWidth	Int		Width of PWDATA and PRDATA
selWidth	Int	1	Width of PSEL
useSlaveError	Boolean	false	Specify the presence of PSLVERR

There is in short how the APB3 bus is defined in the SpinalHDL library :

```
case class Apb3(config: Apb3Config) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
  val PADDR      = UInt(config.addressWidth bit)
  val PSEL       = Bits(config.selWidth bits)
  val PENABLE    = Bool
  val PREADY     = Bool
  val PWRITE     = Bool
  val PWDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
  val PRDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
  val PSLVERR    = if(config.useSlaveError) Bool else null
  //...
}
```

There is a short example of usage :

```
val apbConfig = Apb3Config(
  addressWidth = 12,
  dataWidth    = 32
)
val apbX = Apb3(apbConfig)
val apbY = Apb3(apbConfig)

when(apbY.PENABLE){
  //...
}
```

## Functions and operators

Name	Return	Description
<code>X &gt;&gt; Y</code>		Connect X to Y. Address of Y could be smaller than the one of X
<code>X &lt;&lt; Y</code>		Do the reverse of the >> operator

### 11.8.3 Axi4

#### Introduction

The AXI4 is a high bandwidth bus defined by ARM.

#### Configuration and instantiation

First each time you want to create a AXI4 bus, you will need a configuration object. This configuration object is an `Axi4Config` and has following arguments :

Note : useXXX specify if the bus has XXX signal present.

Parameter name	Type	Default
<code>addressWidth</code>	Int	
<code>dataWidth</code>	Int	
<code>idWidth</code>	Int	
<code>userWidth</code>	Int	
<code>useId</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useRegion</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useBurst</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useLock</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useCache</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useSize</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useQos</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useLen</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useLast</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useResp</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useProt</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useStrb</code>	Boolean	true
<code>useUser</code>	Boolean	false

There is in short how the AXI4 bus is defined in the SpinalHDL library :

```
case class Axi4(config: Axi4Config) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  val aw = Stream(Axi4Aw(config))
  val w  = Stream(Axi4W(config))
  val b  = Stream(Axi4B(config))
  val ar = Stream(Axi4Ar(config))
  val r  = Stream(Axi4R(config))

  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    master(ar, aw, w)
    slave(r, b)
  }
}
```

There is a short example of usage :

```
val axiConfig = Axi4Config(  
    addressWidth = 32,  
    dataWidth    = 32,  
    idWidth      = 4  
)  
val axiX = Axi4(axiConfig)  
val axiY = Axi4(axiConfig)  
  
when(axiY.aw.valid){  
    //...  
}
```

## Variations

There is 3 other variation of the Axi4 bus :

Type	Description
Axi4ReadOnly	Only AR and R channels are present
Axi4WriteOnly	Only AW, W and B channels are present
Axi4Shared	<p>This variation is a library initiative.</p> <p>It use 4 channels, W, B ,R and also a new one which is named AWR.</p> <p>The AWR channel can be used to transmit AR and AW transactions. To dissociate them, a signal <code>write</code> is present.</p> <p>The advantage of this Axi4Shared variation is to use less area, especialy in the interconnect.</p>

## Functions and operators

Name	Return	Description
<code>X &gt;&gt; Y</code>		Connect X to Y. Able infer default values as specified in the AXI4 specification, and also to adapt some width in a safe manner.
<code>X &lt;&lt; Y</code>		Do the reverse of the >> operator
<code>X.toWriteOnly</code>	Axi4WriteOnly	Return an Axi4WriteOnly bus drive by X
<code>X.toReadOnly</code>	Axi4ReadOnly	Return an Axi4ReadOnly bus drive by X

## 11.8.4 AvalonMM

### Introduction

The AvalonMM bus fit very well in FPGA. It is very flexible :

- Able of the same simplicity than APB
- Better for than AHB in many application that need bandwidth because AvalonMM has a mode that decouple read response from commands (reduce latency read latency impact).
- Less performance than AXI but use much less area (Read and write command use the same handshake channel. The master don't need to store address of pending request to avoid Read/Write hazard)

## Configuration and instantiation

The AvalonMM Bundle has a construction argument AvalonMMConfig. Because of the flexible nature of the Avalon bus, the AvalonMMConfig has many configuration elements. For more information the Avalon spec could be found [there](#).

```
case class AvalonMMConfig( addressWidth : Int,
                          dataWidth : Int,
                          burstCountWidth : Int,
                          useByteEnable : Boolean,
                          useDebugAccess : Boolean,
                          useRead : Boolean,
                          useWrite : Boolean,
                          useResponse : Boolean,
                          useLock : Boolean,
                          useWaitRequestn : Boolean,
                          useReadDataValid : Boolean,
                          useBurstCount : Boolean,
                          //useEndOfPacket : Boolean,

                          addressUnits : AddressUnits = symbols,
                          burstCountUnits : AddressUnits = words,
                          burstOnBurstBoundariesOnly : Boolean = false,
                          constantBurstBehavior : Boolean = false,
                          holdTime : Int = 0,
                          linewidthBursts : Boolean = false,
                          maximumPendingReadTransactions : Int = 1,
                          maximumPendingWriteTransactions : Int = 0, // unlimited
                          readLatency : Int = 0,
                          readWaitTime : Int = 0,
                          setupTime : Int = 0,
                          writeWaitTime : Int = 0
                        )
```

This configuration class has also some functions :

Name	Return	Description
getReadOnlyConfig	AvalonMM-Config	Return a similar configuration but with all write feature disabled
getWriteOnlyConfig	AvalonMM-Config	Return a similar configuration but with all read feature disabled

This configuration companion object has also some functions to provide some AvalonMMConfig templates :

Name	Return	Description
fixed(addressWidth, dataWidth, readLatency)	AvalonMM-Config	Return a simple configuration with fixed read timings
pipelined(addressWidth, dataWidth)	AvalonMM-Config	Return a configuration with variable latency read (readDataValid)
bursted(addressWidth, dataWidth, burstCountWidth)	AvalonMM-Config	Return a configuration with variable latency read and burst capabilities

```
// Create a write only AvalonMM configuration with burst capabilities and byte enable
val myAvalonConfig = AvalonMMConfig.bursted(
    addressWidth = addressWidth,
    dataWidth = memDataWidth,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        burstCountWidth = log2Up(burstSize + 1)
    ).copy(
        useByteEnable = true,
        constantBurstBehavior = true,
        burstOnBurstBoundariesOnly = true
    ).getWriteOnlyConfig

// Create an instance of the AvalonMM bus by using this configuration
val bus = AvalonMM(myAvalonConfig)

```

## 11.9 Com

### 11.9.1 UART

#### Introduction

The UART protocol could be used, for instance, to emit an receive RS232 / RS485 frames.

There is an example of an 8 bits frame, with no parity and one stop bit :



#### Bus definition

```

case class Uart() extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
    val txd = Bool // Used to emit frames
    val rxd = Bool // Used to receive frames

    override def asMaster(): Unit = {
        out(txd)
        in(rxd)
    }
}

```

#### UartCtrl

An Uart controller is implemented in the library. This controller has the specificity to use a sampling window to read the rxd pin and then to using an majority vote to filter its value.

IO name	di-rec-tion	type	Description
con-fig	in	UartCtrl-Con-fig	Used to set the clock divider/partity/stop/data length of the controller
write	slave	Stream[Bits]	Stream port used to request a frame transmission
read	mas-ter	Flow[Bits]	Flow port used to receive decoded frames
uart	mas-ter	Uart	Interface to the real world



The controller could be instantiated via an `UartCtrlGenerics` configuration object :

At-tribute	type	Description
dataW-idth-Max	Int	Maximal number of bit inside a frame
clock-Di-vider-Width	Int	Width of the internal clock divider
pre-Sam-pling-Size	Int	Specify how many samplingTick are drop at the beginning of a UART baud
sam-pling-Size	Int	Specify how many samplingTick are used to sample rxd values in the middle of the UART baud
post-Sam-pling-Size	Int	Specify how many samplingTick are drop at the end of a UART baud

## 11.10 IO

### 11.10.1 ReadableOpenDrain

#### ReadableOpenDrain

The `ReadableOpenDrain` bundle is defined as following :

```
case class ReadableOpenDrain[T<: Data](dataType : HardType[T]) extends Bundle with
  IMasterSlave{
    val write,read : T = dataType()

    override def asMaster(): Unit = {
      out(write)
      in(read)
    }
  }
```

Then, as a master, you can use the `read` signal to read the outside value and use the `write` to set the value that you want to drive on the output.

There is an example of usage :

```
val io = new Bundle{
  val dataBus = master(ReadableOpenDrain(Bits(32 bits)))
}

io.dataBus.write := 0x12345678
when(io.dataBus.read === 42){

}
```

## 11.10.2 TriState

### Introduction

SpinalHDL doesn't support natively tristates (inout) signals at the moment. The reason of that are :

- They are not really kind of digital things
- And except for IO, they aren't used for digital design
- The tristate concept doesn't fit naturally in the SpinalHDL internal graph.

Of course it's possible to add a native tristate support, but for the moment, the clean solution to manage them is to use an Tristate Bundle bus defined in the spinal.lib :

### TriState

The TriState bundle is defined as following :

```
case class TriState[T <: Data](dataType : HardType[T]) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  val read,write : T = dataType()
  val writeEnable = Bool

  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    out(write,writeEnable)
    in(read)
  }
}
```

Then, as a master, you can use the read signal to read the outside value, you can use the writeEnable to enable your output, and finally use the write to set the value that you want to drive on the output.

There is an example of usage :

```
val io = new Bundle{
  val dataBus = master(TriState(Bits(32 bits)))
}

io.dataBus.writeEnable := True
io.dataBus.write := 0x12345678
when(io.dataBus.read === 42){

}
```

### TriStateArray

In some case, you need to have the control over the output enable of each individual pin (Like for GPIO). In this range of cases, you can use the TriStateArray bundle.

It is defined as following :

```
case class TriStateArray(width : BitCount) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  val read,write,writeEnable = Bits(width)

  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    out(write,writeEnable)
    in(read)
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}
}
```

It is the same than the TriState bundle, except that the writeEnable is an Bits to control each output buffer.

There is an example of usage :

```
val io = new Bundle{
  val dataBus = master(TriStateArray(32 bits)
}

io.dataBus.writeEnable := 0x87654321
io.dataBus.write := 0x12345678
when(io.dataBus.read === 42){

}
```

## 11.11 Graphics

### 11.11.1 Colors

#### RGB

You can use an Rgb bundle to model colors in hardware. This Rgb bundle take as parameter an RgbConfig classes which specify the number of bits for each channels :

```
case class RgbConfig(rWidth : Int,gWidth : Int,bWidth : Int){
  def getWidth = rWidth + gWidth + bWidth
}

case class Rgb(c: RgbConfig) extends Bundle{
  val r = UInt(c.rWidth bits)
  val g = UInt(c.gWidth bits)
  val b = UInt(c.bWidth bits)
}
```

Those classes could be used as following :

```
val config = RgbConfig(5,6,5)
val color = Rgb(config)
color.r := 31
```

### 11.11.2 VGA

#### VGA bus

An VGA bus definition is available via the Vga bundle.

```
case class Vga (rgbConfig: RgbConfig) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  val vSync = Bool
  val hSync = Bool

  val colorEn = Bool //High when the frame is inside the color area
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

val color = Rgb(rgbConfig)

override def asMaster() = this.asOutput()
}

```

## VGA timings

VGA timings could be modeled in hardware by using an `VgaTimings` bundle :

```

case class VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val colorStart = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val colorEnd = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val syncStart = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val syncEnd = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
}

case class VgaTimings(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val h = VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth)
  val v = VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth)

  def setAs_h640_v480_r60 = ...
  def driveFrom(busCtrl : BusSlaveFactory, baseAddress : Int) = ...
}

```

## VGA controller

An VGA controller is available. It's definition is the following :

```

case class VgaCtrl(rgbConfig: RgbConfig, timingsWidth: Int = 12) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val softReset = in Bool
    val timings = in(VgaTimings(timingsWidth))

    val frameStart = out Bool
    val pixels = slave Stream (Rgb(rgbConfig))
    val vga = master(Vga(rgbConfig))

    val error = out Bool
  }
  // ...
}

```

`frameStart` is a signals that pulse one cycle at the beginning of each new frame.

`pixels` is a stream of color used to feed the VGA interface when needed.

`error` is high when a transaction on the `pixels` is needed, but nothing is present.

## 11.12 EDA

### 11.12.1 QSysify

#### Introduction

QSysify is a tool which is able to generate a QSys IP (tcl script) from a SpinalHDL component by analysing its IO definition. It currently implement the following interfaces features :

- Master/Slave AvalonMM
- Master/Slave APB3
- Clock domain input
- Reset output
- Interrupt input
- Conduit (Used in last resort)

#### Example

In the case of a UART controller :

```
case class AvalonMMUartCtrl(...) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val bus = slave(AvalonMM(AvalonMMUartCtrl.getAvalonMMConfig))
    val uart = master(Uart())
  }

  //...
}
```

The following main will generate the Verilog and the QSys TCL script with io.bus as an AvalonMM and io.uart as a conduit :

```
object AvalonMMUartCtrl{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    //Generate the Verilog
    val toplevel = SpinalVerilog(AvalonMMUartCtrl(UartCtrlMemoryMappedConfig(...))).
    ↳toplevel

    //Add some tags to the avalon bus to specify it's clock domain (information used
    ↳by QSysify)
    toplevel.io.bus addTag(ClockDomainTag(toplevel.clockDomain))

    //Generate the QSys IP (tcl script)
    QSysify(toplevel)
  }
}
```

### tags

Because QSys require some information that are not specified in the SpinalHDL hardware specification, some tags should be added to interface:

#### AvalonMM / APB3

```
io.bus addTag(ClockDomainTag(busClockDomain))
```

#### Interrupt input

```
io.interrupt addTag(InterruptReceiverTag(relatedMemoryInterfacei, ↵
↵interruptClockDomain))
```

#### Reset output

```
io.resetOutput addTag(ResetEmitterTag(resetOutputClockDomain))
```

### Adding new interface support

Basically, the QSysify tool can be setup with a list of interface **emitter** ([as you can see here](#))

You can create your own emitter by creating a new class extending `QSysifyInterfaceEmitter`

## 11.13 Introduction

### 11.13.1 Introduction

The spinal.lib package goals are :

- Provide things that are commonly used in hardware design (FIFO, clock crossing bridges, useful functions)
- Provide simple peripherals (UART, JTAG, VGA, ..)
- Provide some bus definition (Avalon, AMBA, ..)
- Provide some methodology (Stream, Flow, Fragment)
- Provide some example to get the spirit of spinal
- Provide some tools and facilities (latency analyser, QSys converter, ...)

To use features introduced in followings chapter you need, in most of cases, to `import spinal.lib._` in your sources.

---

#### Important:

This package is currently under construction. Documented features could be considered as stable.  
Do not hesitate to use github for suggestions/bug/fixes/enhancements

---

## SIMULATION

### 12.1 Setup and installation

The SpinalSim with Verilator as backend is supported on both Linux and Windows platforms.

#### 12.1.1 Scala

Don't forget to add the following in your build.sbt file

```
fork := true
```

And you will always need the following imports in your Scala testbench :

```
import spinal.core._  
import spinal.core.sim._
```

#### 12.1.2 Linux

You will also need a recent version of Verilator installed :

```
sudo apt-get install git make autoconf g++ flex bison -y # First time prerequisites  
git clone http://git.veripool.org/git/verilator # Only first time  
unsetenv VERILATOR_ROOT # For csh; ignore error if on bash  
unset VERILATOR_ROOT # For bash  
cd verilator  
git pull # Make sure we're up-to-date  
git checkout verilator_3_916  
autoconf # Create ./configure script  
./configure  
make -j$(nproc)  
sudo make install  
echo "DONE"
```

## 12.1.3 Windows

In order to get SpinalSim + Verilator working on windows, you have to do the following :

- Install MSYS2
- Via MSYS2 get gcc/g++/verilator (for verilator you can compile it from the sources)
- Add bin and usrbin of MSYS2 into your windows PATH (ie : C:\msys64\usrbin;C:\msys64\mingw64\bin)

Then you should be able to run SpinalSim + verilator from your Scala project without having to use MSYS2 anymore.

From a fresh install of MSYS2 MinGW 64-bits, you will have to run the following commands inside the MSYS2 MinGW 64-bits shell (enter commands one by one):

### from the minGW packet manager

```
pacman -Syuu
#Close the MSYS2 shell once you're asked to
pacman -Syuu
pacman -S --needed base-devel mingw-w64-x86_64-toolchain \
                    git flex\
                    mingw-w64-x86_64-cmake

pacman -S mingw-w64-x86_64-verilator

#Add C:\msys64\usr\bin;C:\msys64\mingw64\bin to you windows PATH
```

### from source

```
pacman -Syuu
#Close the MSYS2 shell once you're asked to
pacman -Syuu
pacman -S --needed base-devel mingw-w64-x86_64-toolchain \
                    git flex\
                    mingw-w64-x86_64-cmake

git clone http://git.veripool.org/git/verilator
unset VERILATOR_ROOT
cd verilator
git pull
git checkout verilator_3_916
autoconf
./configure
export CPLUS_INCLUDE_PATH=/usr/include:$CPLUS_INCLUDE_PATH
export PATH=/usr/bin/core_perl:$PATH
cp /usr/include/FlexLexer.h ./src

make -j$(nproc)
make install
echo "DONE"
#Add C:\msys64\usr\bin;C:\msys64\mingw64\bin to you windows PATH
```

---

**Important:** Be sure that your PATH environnement variable is pointing to the JDK 1.8 and don't contain a JRE installation.

---



**Important:** Adding the MSYS2 bin folders into your windows PATH could potentially have some side effects. It's why it is safer to add them as last elements of the PATH to reduce their priority.

## 12.2 Boot a simulation

### 12.2.1 Introduction

There is an example hardware definition + testbench :

```
//Your hardware toplevel
import spinal.core._
class TopLevel extends Component{
    ...
}

//Your toplevel tester
import spinal.sim._
import spinal.core.sim._

object DutTests {
    def main(args: Array[String]): Unit = {
        SimConfig.withWave.compile(new TopLevel).doSim{ dut =>
            //Simulation code here
        }
    }
}
```

### 12.2.2 Configuration

SimConfig will return you a default simulation configuration instance on which you can call multiple function to configure your simulation :

Syntax	Description
withWave	Enable the simulation wave capture
withConfig(SpinalConfig)	Specify the SpinalConfig that should be use to generate the hardware
allOptimisation	Enable all the RTL compilation optimisation to reduce simulation time (will increase compilation time)
workspacePath(path)	Change the folder where the sim files are generated

Then you can call the `compile(rtl)` function to compile the hardware and warmup the simulator. This will return you a `SimCompiled` instance.

On this `SimCompiled` instance you can run your simulation with the following functions :

Syntax	Description
doSim[(simName[, seed])]{dut => ... }	Run the simulation until the main thread is done (doesn't wait forked threads) or until all threads are stuck
doSimUntilVoid[(simName[, seed])]{dut => ... }	Run the simulation until all threads are done or stuck

For example :

```

val spinalConfig = SpinalConfig(defaultClockDomainFrequency = FixedFrequency(10 MHz))

SimConfig
  .withConfig(spinalConfig)
  .withWave
  .allOptimisation
  .workspacePath("~/tmp")
  .compile(new TopLevel)
  .doSim{ dut =>
    //Simulation code here
  }

```

Note that by default, the simulation will work into the simWorkspace/xxx folders. You can override the sim-Workspace location by setting the SPINALSIM\_WORKSPACE environment variable.

### 12.2.3 Running multiple tests on the same hardware

```

val compiled = SimConfig.withWave.compile(new Dut)

compiled.doSim("testA"){ dut =>
  //Simulation code here
}

compiled.doSim("testB"){ dut =>
  //Simulation code here
}

```

### 12.2.4 Throw Success or Failure of the simulation from a thread

At any moment during a simulation you can call simSuccess or simFailure to end it.

## 12.3 Accessing signals of the simulation

### 12.3.1 Read and write signals

Each interface signals of the toplevel can be read into scala and write from scala :

Syntax	Description
Bool.toBoolean	Read an hardware Bool as a Scala Boolean value
Bits/UInt/SInt.toInt	Read an hardware BitVector as a Scala Int value
Bits/UInt/SInt.toLong	Read an hardware BitVector as a Scala Long value
Bits/UInt/SInt.toBigInt	Read an hardware BitVector as a Scala BigInt value
SpinalEnumCraft.toEnum	Read an hardware SpinalEnumCraft as a Scala SpinalEnumElement value
Bool #= Boolean	Assign a hardware Bool from an Scala Boolean
Bits/UInt/SInt #= Int	Assign a hardware BitVector from an Scala Int
Bits/UInt/SInt #= Long	Assign a hardware BitVector from an Scala Long
Bits/UInt/SInt #= BigInt	Assign a hardware BitVector from an Scala BigInt
SpinalEnumCraft #= SpinalEnumElement	Assign a hardware SpinalEnumCraft from an Scala SpinalEnumElement

```
dut.io.a := 42
dut.io.a := 421
dut.io.a := BigInt("101010", 2)
dut.io.a := BigInt("0123456789ABCDEF", 16)
println(dut.io.b.toInt)
```

### 12.3.2 Accessing signals inside the components hierarchy

To access signals which are inside the components hierarchy, you have first to set the given signal as `simPublic`.

You can add this `simPublic` tag directly into the hardware description :

```
object SimAccessSubSignal {
  import spinal.core.sim._

  class TopLevel extends Component {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init(0) simPublic() //Here we add the simPublic
    ↪tag on the counter register to make it visible
    counter := counter + 1
  }

  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SimConfig.compile(new TopLevel).doSim{dut =>
      dut.clockDomain.forkStimulus(10)

      for(i <- 0 to 3){
        dut.clockDomain.waitSampling()
        println(dut.counter.toInt)
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Or you can add it later, after having instantiate your toplevel for the simulation :

```
object SimAccessSubSignal {
  import spinal.core.sim._
  class TopLevel extends Component {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(8 bits)) init(0)
    counter := counter + 1
  }

  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SimConfig.compile{
      val dut = new TopLevel
      dut.counter.simPublic()
      dut
    }.doSim{dut =>
      dut.clockDomain.forkStimulus(10)

      for(i <- 0 to 3){
        dut.clockDomain.waitSampling()
        println(dut.counter.toInt)
      }
    }
  }
}
```

## 12.4 Clock domains

### 12.4.1 Stimulus API

There is a list of ClockDomain stimulation functionalities :

ClockDomain stimulus functions	Description
forkStimulus(period)	Fork a simulation process to generate the clockdomain stimulus (clock, reset, softReset, clockEnable signals)
forkSimSpeed-Printer(printPeriod)	Fork a simulation process which will periodically print the simulation speed in kcycles per real time second. <code>printPeriod</code> is in realtime second
clockToggle()	Toggle the clock signal
fallingEdge()	Clear the clock signal
risingEdge()	Set the clock signal
assertReset()	Set the reset signal to its active level
deassertReset()	Set the reset signal to its inactive level
assertClockEnable()	Set the clockEnable signal to its active level
disassertClockEnable()	Set the clockEnable signal to its active level
assertSoftReset()	Set the softReset signal to its active level
disassertSoftReset()	Set the softReset signal to its active level

### 12.4.2 Wait API

There is a list of ClockDomain utilities that you can use to wait a given event from it :

ClockDomain wait functions	Description
waitSampling([cyclesCount])	Wait until the ClockDomain made a sampling, (Active clock edge && deassertReset && assertClockEnable)
waitRisingEdge([cyclesCount])	Wait cyclesCount rising edges on the clock, if not cycleCount isn't specified => 1 cycle, cycleCount = 0 is legal, not sensitive to reset/softReset/clockEnable
waitFallingEdge([cyclesCount])	Same as waitRisingEdge but for the falling edge
waitActiveEdge([cyclesCount])	Same as waitRisingEdge but for the edge level specified by the ClockDomainConfig
waitRisingEdgeWhere(condition)	As waitRisingEdge, but to exit, the boolean condition must be true when the rising edge occure
waitFallingEdgeWhere(condition)	Same as waitRisingEdgeWhere but for the falling edge
waitActiveEdgeWhere(condition)	Same as waitRisingEdgeWhere but for the edge level specified by the ClockDomainConfig

All the functionalities of the wait API can only be called from the inside of a thread, and not from a callback.

### 12.4.3 Callback API

There is a list of ClockDomain utilities that you can use to wait a given event from it :

ClockDomain callback functions	Description
onNextSampling { callback }	Execute the callback code only once on next the ClockDomain sample (active edge + reset off + clock enable on)
onSamplings { callback }	Execute the callback code each time the ClockDomain sample (active edge + reset off + clock enable on)
onActiveEdges { callback }	Execute the callback code each time the ClockDomain clock do its configured edge
onEdges { callback }	Execute the callback code each time the ClockDomain clock do a rising or falling edge
onRisingEdges { callback }	Execute the callback code each time the ClockDomain clock do a rising edge
onFallingEdges { callback }	Execute the callback code each time the ClockDomain clock do a falling edge

### 12.4.4 Default ClockDomain

You can access the default ClockDomain of your toplevel by the following way :

```
//Example of thread forking to generate an reset and then toggeling the clock each 5_
↳units of times.
//dut.clockDomain refer to the implicit clock domain during the component_
↳instantiation.
fork{
    dut.clockDomain.assertReset()
    dut.clockDomain.fallingEdge()
    sleep(10)
    while(true){
        dut.clockDomain.clockToggle()
        sleep(5)
    }
}
```

But you can also directly fork a standard reset/clock process :

```
dut.clockDomain.forkStimulus(period = 10)
```

And there is an example of how to wait for a rising edge on the clock :

```
dut.clockDomain.waitRisingEdge()
```

### 12.4.5 New ClockDomain

If you toplevel define some clock and reset inputs which aren't directly integrated into their clockdomain, you can define their corresponding clockdomain directly in the testbench :

```
//In the testbench
ClockDomain(dut.io.coreClk, dut.io.coreReset).forkStimulus(10)
```

## 12.5 Thread-full API

In SpinalSim, you can write your testbench by using multiple threads in a similar way to SystemVerilog, and a bit like VHDL/Verilog process/always blocks. This allow to write concurant tasks of your testbench and to move/wait in the simulation time with a fluent API.

### 12.5.1 Fork and join simulation threads

```
//Create a new thread
val myNewThread = fork{
  //New simulation thread body
}

//Wait until `myNewThread` is execution is done.
myNewThread.join()
```

### 12.5.2 Sleep and waitUntil

```
//Sleep 1000 units of time
sleep(1000)

//waitUntil the dut.io.a value is bigger than 42 before continuing
waitUntil(dut.io.a > 42)
```

## 12.6 Thread-less API

There is some functions that you can use to avoid the usage of threading but which still allow you to move in time.

Threadless functions	Description
de-layed(delay){callback}	Register the callback code to be called at in a given simulation time.

The advantage of the delayed function over using a regular simulation thread + sleep are :

- Performance (no context switching)
- Memory usage (no native JVM thread memory allocation)

Also, some other thread-less function related with ClockDomain are documented as [Callback API](#), and some others related with the delta-cycle execution are documented Sensitive API

## 12.7 Simulation engine

This page explain the internals of the simulation engine.

Basically, the simulation engine emulate a event-driven simulator (VHDL/Verilog like) by applying the following simulation loop on the top of the Verilator C++ simulation model :



At a low level, the simulation engine manage the following primitives :

- Sensitive callbacks, which allow to call a function on each simulation delta cycle
- Delayed callbacks, which allow to call a function in a future simulation time
- Simulation threads, which allow to describe concurrent with many times utilities
- Command buffer, which allow to delay the write access to the dut to the end of the current delta cycle

There is some practical uses of those primitives :

- Sensitive callbacks can be used to wakeup a simulation thread when a given condition happen, like a rising edge on a clock
- Delayed callbacks can be used to schedule stimulus as desasserting a reset after a given time or toggle the clock
- Both sensitive and delayed callbacks can be used to resume a simulation thread
- A simulation thread can be used (for instance) to produce stimulus and check the dut output values
- The command buffer purpose is mainly avoid all concurrency issues between the DUT and the testbench

## 12.8 Examples

### 12.8.1 Asynchronous adder

```
import spinal.core.sim._
import spinal.core._
import spinal.sim._

import scala.util.Random

object SimAsynchronousExample {
  class Dut extends Component {
    val io = new Bundle {
      val a, b, c = in UInt (8 bits)
      val result = out UInt (8 bits)
    }
    io.result := io.a + io.b - io.c
  }

  def main(args: Array[String]): Unit = {
    SimConfig.withWave.compile(new Dut).doSim{ dut =>
      var idx = 0
      while(idx < 100){
        val a, b, c = Random.nextInt(256)
        dut.io.a #= a
        dut.io.b #= b
        dut.io.c #= c
        sleep(1)
        assert(dut.io.result.toInt == ((a+b-c) & 0xFF))
        idx += 1
      }
    }
  }
}
```



## 12.8.2 Dual clock fifo

```
//Compile the simulator
val compiled = SimConfig.withWave.allOptimisation.compile(
  rtl = new StreamFifoCC(
    dataType = Bits(32 bits),
    depth = 32,
    pushClock = ClockDomain.external("clkA"),
    popClock = ClockDomain.external("clkB")
  )
)

//Run the simulation
compiled.doSimUntilVoid{dut =>
  val queueModel = mutable.Queue[Long]()

  //Fork a thread to manage the clock domains signals
  val clocksThread = fork{
    //Clear clock domains signals, to be sure the simulation capture their first edge.
    dut.pushClock.fallingEdge()
    dut.popClock.fallingEdge()
    dut.pushClock.deassertReset()
    dut.popClock.deassertReset()
    sleep(0)

    //Do the resets
    dut.pushClock.assertReset()
    dut.popClock.assertReset()
    sleep(10)
    dut.pushClock.deassertReset()
    dut.popClock.deassertReset()
    sleep(1)

    //Forever, randomly toggle one of the clocks (will create asynchronous clocks.
    ↪without fixed frequencies)
    while(true){
      if(Random.nextBoolean()) {
        dut.pushClock.clockToggle()
      } else {
        dut.popClock.clockToggle()
      }
      sleep(1)
    }
  }

  //Push data randomly and fill the queueModel with pushed transactions
  val pushThread = fork{
    while(true){
      dut.io.push.valid.randomize()
      dut.io.push.payload.randomize()
      dut.pushClock.waitSampling()
      if(dut.io.push.valid.toBoolean && dut.io.push.ready.toBoolean){
        queueModel.enqueue(dut.io.push.payload.toLong)
      }
    }
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

//Pop data randomly and check that it match with the queueModel
val popThread = fork{
  for(i <- 0 until 1000000){
    dut.io.pop.ready.randomize()
    dut.popClock.waitSampling()
    if(dut.io.pop.valid.toBoolean && dut.io.pop.ready.toBoolean){
      assert(dut.io.pop.payload.toLong == queueModel.dequeue())
    }
  }
  simSuccess()
}

```

### 12.8.3 Single clock fifo

```

//Compile the simulator
val compiled = SimConfig.withWave.allOptimisation.compile(
  rtl = new StreamFifo(
    dataType = Bits(32 bits),
    depth = 32
  )
)

//Run the simulation
compiled.doSimUntilVoid{dut =>
  val queueModel = mutable.Queue[Long]()

  dut.clockDomain.forkStimulus(period = 10)
  SimTimeout(1000000*10)

  //Push data randomly and fill the queueModel with pushed transactions
  val pushThread = fork{
    dut.io.push.valid #= false
    while(true){
      dut.io.push.valid.randomize()
      dut.io.push.payload.randomize()
      dut.clockDomain.waitSampling()
      if(dut.io.push.valid.toBoolean && dut.io.push.ready.toBoolean){
        queueModel.enqueue(dut.io.push.payload.toLong)
      }
    }
  }

  //Pop data randomly and check that it match with the queueModel
  val popThread = fork{
    dut.io.pop.ready #= true
    for(i <- 0 until 1000000){
      dut.io.pop.ready.randomize()
      dut.clockDomain.waitSampling()
      if(dut.io.pop.valid.toBoolean && dut.io.pop.ready.toBoolean){
        assert(dut.io.pop.payload.toLong == queueModel.dequeue())
      }
    }
  }
  simSuccess()
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

}
}

```

## 12.8.4 Synchronous adder

```

import spinal.sim._
import spinal.core._
import spinal.core.sim._

import scala.util.Random

object SimSynchronousExample {
  class Dut extends Component {
    val io = new Bundle {
      val a, b, c = in UInt (8 bits)
      val result = out UInt (8 bits)
    }
    io.result := RegNext(io.a + io.b - io.c) init(0)
  }

  def main(args: Array[String]): Unit = {
    SimConfig.withWave.compile(new Dut).doSim{ dut =>
      dut.clockDomain.forkStimulus(period = 10)

      var resultModel = 0
      for(idx <- 0 until 100){
        dut.io.a #= Random.nextInt(256)
        dut.io.b #= Random.nextInt(256)
        dut.io.c #= Random.nextInt(256)
        dut.clockDomain.waitSampling()
        assert(dut.io.result.toInt == resultModel)
        resultModel = (dut.io.a.toInt + dut.io.b.toInt - dut.io.c.toInt) & 0xFF
      }
    }
  }
}

```

## 12.8.5 Uart decoder

```

//Fork a simulation process which will analyse the uartPin and print transmited bytes_
↳into the simulation terminal
fork{
  //Wait until the design put the uartPin to true (wait the reset effect)
  waitUntil(uartPin.toBoolean == true)

  while(true) {
    waitUntil(uartPin.toBoolean == false)
    sleep(baudPeriod/2)

    assert(uartPin.toBoolean == false)
    sleep(baudPeriod)

    var buffer = 0

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    for(bitId <- 0 to 7) {
        if(uartPin.toBoolean)
            buffer |= 1 << bitId
        sleep(baudPeriod)
    }

    assert(uartPin.toBoolean == true)
    print(buffer.toChar)
}

```

### 12.8.6 Uart encoder

```

//Fork a simulation process which will get char typed into the simulation terminal
↳and transmit them on the simulation uartPin
fork{
    uartPin #= true
    while(true) {
        //System.in is the java equivalent of the C stdin
        if(System.in.available() != 0){
            val buffer = System.in.read()
            uartPin #= false
            sleep(baudPeriod)

            for(bitId <- 0 to 7) {
                uartPin #= ((buffer >> bitId) & 1) != 0
                sleep(baudPeriod)
            }

            uartPin #= true
            sleep(baudPeriod)
        } else {
            sleep(baudPeriod * 10) //Sleep a little while to avoid pulling System.in to
↳often
        }
    }
}

```

## 12.9 Introduction

As always you can use your standard simulation tools to simulate the VHDL/Verilog generated out from SpinalHDL, but since SpinalHDL 1.0.0 the language integrate an API to write testbenches and test your hardware directly in Scala. This API provide the capabilities to read and write the DUT signals, fork and join simulation processes, sleep and wait until a given condition is filled.

## 12.10 How SpinalHDL simulate the hardware

Behind the scene SpinalHDL is generating a C++ cycle accurate model of your hardware by generating the equivalent Verilog and asking Verilator to convert it into a C++ model.

Then SpinalHDL ask GCC to compile the C++ model into an shared object (.so) and bind it back to Scala via JNR-FFI.

Finally, as the native Verilator API is rude, SpinalHDL abstract it by providing an simulation multi-threaded API to help the user in his testbench implementation.

This method has several advantage :

- The C++ simulation model is really fast to process simulation steps
- It test the generated Verilog hardware instead of the SpinalHDL internal model
- It doesn't require SpinalHDL to be able itself to simulate the hardware (Less codebase, less bugs as Verilator is a reliable tool)

And some limitations :

- Verilator will only accept to translate Synthetisable Verilog code

## 12.11 Performance

As verilator is currently the simulation backend, the simulation speed is really high. On a little SoC like [Murax](#) my laptop is capable to simulate 1.2 million clock cycles per realtime seconds.



## EXAMPLES

### 13.1 Simple ones

#### 13.1.1 APB3 definition

##### Introduction

This example will show the syntax to define an APB3 Bundle.

##### Specification

The specification from ARM could be interpreted as follows:

Signal Name	Type	Driver side	Comment
PADDR	UInt(addressWidth bits)	Master	Address in byte
PSEL	Bits(selWidth)	Master	One bit per slave
PENABLE	Bool	Master	
PWRITE	Bool	Master	
PWDATA	Bits(dataWidth bits)	Master	
PREADY	Bool	Slave	
PRDATA	Bits(dataWidth bits)	Slave	
PSLVERROR	Bool	Slave	Optional

##### Implementation

This specification shows that the APB3 bus has multiple possible configurations. To represent that, we can define a configuration class in Scala:

```
case class Apb3Config(  
  addressWidth : Int,  
  dataWidth    : Int,  
  selWidth     : Int    = 1,  
  useSlaveError : Boolean = true  
)
```

Then we can define the APB3 Bundle which will be used to represent the bus in hardware:

```
case class Apb3(config: Apb3Config) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {  
  val PADDR = UInt(config.addressWidth bit)  
  val PSEL  = Bits(config.selWidth bits)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

val PENABLE    = Bool
val PREADY     = Bool
val PWRITE     = Bool
val PWDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
val PRDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
val PSLVERR    = if(config.useSlaveError) Bool else null

override def asMaster(): Unit = {
  out(PADDR, PSEL, PENABLE, PWRITE, PWDATA)
  in(PREADY, PRDATA)
  if(config.useSlaveError) in(PSLVERR)
}

```

## Usage

Here is a usage example of this definition:

```

val apbConfig = Apb3Config(
  addressWidth = 16,
  dataWidth    = 32,
  selWidth     = 1,
  useSlaveError = false
)

val io = new Bundle{
  val apb = slave(Apb3(apbConfig))
}

io.apb.PREADY := True
when(io.apb.PSEL(0) && io.apb.PENABLE){
  //...
}

```

### 13.1.2 Carry adder

This example defines a component with inputs `a` and `b`, and a `result` output. At any time, `result` will be the sum of `a` and `b` (combinatorial). This sum is manually done by a carry adder logic.

```

class CarryAdder(size : Int) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val a = in UInt(size bits)
    val b = in UInt(size bits)
    val result = out UInt(size bits)    //result = a + b
  }

  var c = False                       //Carry, like a VHDL variable
  for (i <- 0 until size) {
    //Create some intermediate value in the loop scope.
    val a = io.a(i)
    val b = io.b(i)

    //The carry adder's asynchronous logic
    io.result(i) := a ^ b ^ c
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

    c \= (a & b) | (a & c) | (b & c);    //variable assignment
  }
}

object CarryAdderProject {
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new CarryAdder(4))
  }
}

```

### 13.1.3 Color summing

First let's define a Color Bundle with an addition operator.

```

case class Color(channelWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val r = UInt(channelWidth bits)
  val g = UInt(channelWidth bits)
  val b = UInt(channelWidth bits)

  def +(that: Color): Color = {
    val result = Color(channelWidth)
    result.r := this.r + that.r
    result.g := this.g + that.g
    result.b := this.b + that.b
    return result
  }

  def clear(): Color = {
    this.r := 0
    this.g := 0
    this.b := 0
    this
  }
}

```

Then let's define a component with a sources input which is a vector of colors, and a result output which is the sum of the sources input.

```

class ColorSumming(sourceCount: Int, channelWidth: Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val sources = in Vec(Color(channelWidth), sourceCount)
    val result = out(Color(channelWidth))
  }

  var sum = Color(channelWidth)
  sum.clear()
  for (i <- 0 to sourceCount - 1) {
    sum \= sum + io.sources(i)
  }
  io.result := sum
}

```

### 13.1.4 Counter with clear

This example defines a component with a clear input and a value output. Each clock cycle, the value output is incrementing, but when clear is high, value is cleared.

```
class Counter(width : Int) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val clear = in Bool
    val value = out UInt(width bits)
  }
  val register = Reg(UInt(width bits)) init(0)
  register := register + 1
  when(io.clear){
    register := 0
  }
  io.value := register
}
```

### 13.1.5 Introduction

All examples assume that you have the following imports on the top of your scala file:

```
import spinal.core._
import spinal.lib._
```

To generate VHDL for a given component, you can place the following at the bottom of your scala file:

```
object MyMainObject {
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new TheComponentThatIWantToGenerate(constructionArguments)) //Or
    ↪ SpinalVerilog
  }
}
```

### 13.1.6 PLL BlackBox and reset controller

Let's imagine you want to define a TopLevel component which instantiates a PLL BlackBox, and create a new clock domain from it which will be used by your core logic. Let's also imagine that you want to adapt an external asynchronous reset into this core clock domain to a synchronous reset source.

The following imports will be used in code examples on this page:

```
import spinal.core._
import spinal.lib._
```

#### The PLL BlackBox definition

This is how to define the PLL BlackBox:

```
class PLL extends BlackBox{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val clkIn    = in Bool
    val clkOut   = out Bool
    val isLocked = out Bool
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

noIoPrefix()
}

```

This will correspond to the following VHDL component:

```

component PLL is
  port(
    clkIn    : in std_logic;
    clkOut   : out std_logic;
    isLocked : out std_logic
  );
end component;

```

## TopLevel definition

This is how to define your TopLevel which instantiates the PLL, creates the new ClockDomain, and also adapts the asynchronous reset input to a synchronous reset:

```

class TopLevel extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle {
    val aReset    = in Bool
    val clk100Mhz = in Bool
    val result     = out UInt(4 bits)
  }

  // Create an Area to manage all clocks and reset things
  val clkCtrl = new Area {
    //Instantiate and drive the PLL
    val pll = new PLL
    pll.io.clkIn := io.clk100Mhz

    //Create a new clock domain named 'core'
    val coreClockDomain = ClockDomain.internal(
      name = "core",
      frequency = FixedFrequency(200 MHz) // This frequency specification can be used
                                           // by coreClockDomain users to do some
    )
    ↪calculations

    //Drive clock and reset signals of the coreClockDomain previously created
    coreClockDomain.clock := pll.io.clkOut
    coreClockDomain.reset := ResetCtrl.asyncAssertSyncDeassert(
      input = io.aReset || ! pll.io.isLocked,
      clockDomain = coreClockDomain
    )
  }

  //Create a ClockingArea which will be under the effect of the clkCtrl.
  ↪coreClockDomain
  val core = new ClockingArea(clkCtrl.coreClockDomain){
    //Do your stuff which use coreClockDomain here
    val counter = Reg(UInt(4 bits)) init(0)
    counter := counter + 1
    io.result := counter
  }
}

```

### 13.1.7 RGB to gray

Let's imagine a component that converts an RGB color into a gray one, and then writes it into external memory.

io name	Direction	Description
clear	in	Clear all internal registers
r,g,b	in	Color inputs
wr	out	Memory write
address	out	Memory address, incrementing each cycle
data	out	Memory data, gray level

```
class RgbToGray extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val clear = in Bool
    val r,g,b = in UInt(8 bits)

    val wr = out Bool
    val address = out UInt(16 bits)
    val data = out UInt(8 bits)
  }

  def coef(value : UInt,by : Float) : UInt = (value * U((255*by).toInt,8 bits) >> 8)
  val gray = RegNext(
    coef(io.r,0.3f) +
    coef(io.g,0.4f) +
    coef(io.b,0.3f)
  )

  val address = CounterFreeRun(stateCount = 1 << 16)
  io.address := address
  io.wr := True
  io.data := gray

  when(io.clear){
    gray := 0
    address.clear()
    io.wr := False
  }
}
```

### 13.1.8 Sinus rom

Let's imagine that you want to generate a sine wave and also have a filtered version of it (which is completely useless in practical, but let's do it as an example).

Parameters name	Type	Description
resolutionWidth	Int	Number of bits used to represent numbers
sampleCount	Int	Number of samples in a sine period

IO name	Direction	Type	Description
sin	out	SInt(resolutionWidth bits)	Output which plays the sine wave
sin-Filtred	out	SInt(resolutionWidth bits)	Output which plays the filtered version of the sine

So let's define the Component:

```
class TopLevel(resolutionWidth : Int, sampleCount : Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val sin = out SInt(resolutionWidth bits)
    val sinFiltred = out SInt(resolutionWidth bits)
  }
  // Here will come the logic implementation
}
```

To play the sine wave on the sin output, you can define a ROM which contain all samples of a sine period (tt could be just a quarter, but let's do things by the simplest way).

Then you can read that ROM with an phase counter and this will generate your sine wave.

```
//Function used to generate the rom (later)
def sinTable = for(sampleIndex <- 0 until sampleCount) yield {
  val sinValue = Math.sin(2 * Math.PI * sampleIndex / sampleCount)
  S((sinValue * ((1<<resolutionWidth)/2-1)).toInt, resolutionWidth bitss)
}

val rom = Mem(SInt(resolutionWidth bits), initialContent = sinTable)
val phase = Reg(UInt(log2Up(sampleCount) bitss)) init(0)
phase := phase + 1

io.sin := rom.readSync(phase)
```

Then to generate sinFiltred, you can for example use a first order low pass filter implementation:

```
io.sinFiltred := RegNext(io.sinFiltred - (io.sinFiltred >> 5) + (io.sin >> 5))
  ↪ init(0)
```

Here is the complete code:

```
class TopLevel(resolutionWidth : Int, sampleCount : Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val sin = out SInt(resolutionWidth bits)
    val sinFiltred = out SInt(resolutionWidth bits)
  }

  def sinTable = for(sampleIndex <- 0 until sampleCount) yield {
    val sinValue = Math.sin(2 * Math.PI * sampleIndex / sampleCount)
    S((sinValue * ((1<<resolutionWidth)/2-1)).toInt, resolutionWidth bitss)
  }

  val rom = Mem(SInt(resolutionWidth bits), initialContent = sinTable)
  val phase = Reg(UInt(log2Up(sampleCount) bitss)) init(0)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

phase := phase + 1

io.sin := rom.readSync(phase)
io.sinFiltred := RegNext(io.sinFiltred - (io.sinFiltred >> 5) + (io.sin >> 5))
→ init(0)
}

```

## 13.2 Intermediates ones

### 13.2.1 Fractal calculator

#### Introduction

This example will show a simple implementation (without optimization) of a Mandelbrot fractal calculator by using data streams and fixed point calculations.

#### Specification

The component will receive one `Stream` of pixel tasks (which contain the XY coordinates in the Mandelbrot space) and will produce one `Stream` of pixel results (which contain the number of iterations done for the corresponding task).

Let's specify the IO of our component:

IO Name	Direction	Type	Description
cmd	slave	Stream[PixelTask]	Input of XY coordinates to process
rsp	master	Stream[PixelResult]	Output of iteration count needed for the corresponding cmd transaction

Let's specify the PixelTask Bundle:

Element Name	Type	Description
x	SFix	Coordinate in the Mandelbrot space
y	SFix	Coordinate in the Mandelbrot space

Let's specify the PixelResult Bundle:

Element Name	Type	Description
iteration	UInt	Number of iterations required to solve the Mandelbrot coordinates

## Elaboration parameters (Generics)

Let's define the class that will provide construction parameters of our system:

```
case class PixelSolverGenerics(fixAmplitude : Int,
                              fixResolution : Int,
                              iterationLimit : Int){
  val iterationWidth = log2Up(iterationLimit+1)
  def iterationType = UInt(iterationWidth bits)
  def fixType = SFix(
    peak = fixAmplitude exp,
    resolution = fixResolution exp
  )
}
```

**Note:** iterationType and fixType are functions that you can call to instantiate new signals. It's like a typedef in C.

## Bundle definition

```
case class PixelTask(g : PixelSolverGenerics) extends Bundle{
  val x,y = g.fixType
}

case class PixelResult(g : PixelSolverGenerics) extends Bundle{
  val iteration = g.iterationType
}
```

## Component implementation

And now the implementation. The one below is a very simple one without pipelining / multi-threading.

```
case class PixelSolver(g : PixelSolverGenerics) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val cmd = slave Stream(PixelTask(g))
    val rsp = master Stream(PixelResult(g))
  }

  import g._

  //Define states
  val x,y      = Reg(fixType) init(0)
  val iteration = Reg(iterationType) init(0)

  //Do some shared calculation
  val xx = x*x
  val yy = y*y
  val xy = x*y

  //Apply default assignement
  io.cmd.ready := False
  io.rsp.valid := False
  io.rsp.iteration := iteration
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

when(io.cmd.valid) {
  //Is the mandelbrot iteration done ?
  when(xx + yy >= 4.0 || iteration === iterationLimit) {
    io.rsp.valid := True
    when(io.rsp.ready){
      io.cmd.ready := True
      x := 0
      y := 0
      iteration := 0
    }
  } otherwise {
    x := (xx - yy + io.cmd.x).truncated
    y := (((xy) << 1) + io.cmd.y).truncated
    iteration := iteration + 1
  }
}
}

```

## 13.2.2 UART

### Specification

This UART controller tutorial is based on [this](#) implementation.

This implementation is characterized by:

- ClockDivider/Parity/StopBit/DataLength configs are set by the component inputs.
- RXD input is filtered by using a sampling window of N samples and a majority vote.

Interfaces of this UartCtrl are:

Name	Type	Description
config	UartCtrl-Config	Give all configurations to the controller
write	Stream[Bits]	Port used by the system to give transmission order to the controller
read	Flow[Bits]	Port used by the controller to notify the system about a successfully received frame
uart	Uart	Uart interface with rxd / txd



## Data structures

Before implementing the controller itself we need to define some data structures.

## Controller construction parameters

Name	Type	Description
dataWidthMax	Int	Maximum number of data bits that could be sent using a single UART frame
clockDividerWidth	Int	Number of bits that the clock divider has
preSamplingSize	Int	Number of samples to drop at the beginning of the sampling window
samplingSize	Int	Number of samples use at the middle of the window to get the filtered RXD value
postSamplingSize	Int	Number of samples to drop at the end of the sampling window

To make the implementation easier let's assume that `preSamplingSize + samplingSize + postSamplingSize` is always a power of two.

Instead of adding each construction parameters (generics) to `UartCtrl` one by one, we can group them inside a class that will be used as single parameter of `UartCtrl`.

```
case class UartCtrlGenerics( dataWidthMax: Int = 8,
                             clockDividerWidth: Int = 20, // baudrate = Fclk /
↳ rxSamplePerBit / clockDividerWidth
                             preSamplingSize: Int = 1,
                             samplingSize: Int = 5,
                             postSamplingSize: Int = 2) {
  val rxSamplePerBit = preSamplingSize + samplingSize + postSamplingSize
  assert(isPow2(rxSamplePerBit))
  if ((samplingSize % 2) == 0)
    SpinalWarning(s"It's not nice to have a odd samplingSize value (because of the
↳ majority vote)")
}
```

## UART bus

Let's define a UART bus without flow control.

```
case class Uart() extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
  val txd = Bool
  val rxd = Bool

  override def asMaster(): Unit = {
    out(txd)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    in(rxd)
  }
}

```

## UART configuration enums

Let's define parity and stop bit enumerations.

```

object UartParityType extends SpinalEnum(sequencial) {
  val NONE, EVEN, ODD = newElement()
}

object UartStopType extends SpinalEnum(sequencial) {
  val ONE, TWO = newElement()
  def toBitCount(that : T) : UInt = (that === ONE) ? U"0" | U"1"
}

```

## UartCtrl configuration Bundles

Let's define Bundles that will be used as IO elements to setup UartCtrl.

```

case class UartCtrlFrameConfig(g: UartCtrlGenerics) extends Bundle {
  val dataLength = UInt(log2Up(g.dataWidthMax) bit) //Bit count = dataLength + 1
  val stop       = UartStopType()
  val parity     = UartParityType()
}

case class UartCtrlConfig(g: UartCtrlGenerics) extends Bundle {
  val frame      = UartCtrlFrameConfig(g)
  val clockDivider = UInt (g.clockDividerWidth bit) //see UartCtrlGenerics.
  ↪clockDividerWidth for calculation

  def setClockDivider(baudrate : Double, clkFrequency : Double = ClockDomain.current.
  ↪frequency.getValue) : Unit = {
    clockDivider := (clkFrequency / baudrate / g.rxSamplePerBit).toInt
  }
}

```

## Implementation

In UartCtrl, 3 things will be instantiated:

- One clock divider that generates a tick pulse at the UART RX sampling rate.
- One UartCtrlTx Component
- One UartCtrlRx Component

## UartCtrlTx

The interfaces of this Component are the following :

Name	Type	Description
configFrame	UartCtrlFrameConfig	Contains data bit width count and parity/stop bits configurations
samplingTick	Bool	Time reference that pulses rxSamplePerBit times per UART baud
write	Stream[Bool]	Port used by the system to give transmission orders to the controller
txd	Bool	UART txd pin

Let's define the enumeration that will be used to store the state of UartCtrlTx:

```
object UartCtrlTxState extends SpinalEnum {
  val IDLE, START, DATA, PARITY, STOP = newElement()
}
```

Let's define the skeleton of UartCtrlTx:

```
class UartCtrlTx(g : UartCtrlGenerics) extends Component {
  import g._

  val io = new Bundle {
    val configFrame = in(UartCtrlFrameConfig(g))
    val samplingTick = in Bool
    val write = slave Stream (Bits(dataWidthMax bit))
    val txd = out Bool
  }

  // Provide one clockDivider.tick each rxSamplePerBit pulses of io.samplingTick
  // Used by the stateMachine as a baud rate time reference
  val clockDivider = new Area {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(log2Up(rxSamplePerBit) bits)) init(0)
    val tick = False
    ..
  }

  // Count up each clockDivider.tick, used by the state machine to count up data bits,
  // and stop bits
  val tickCounter = new Area {
    val value = Reg(UInt(Math.max(dataWidthMax, 2) bit))
    def reset() = value := 0
    ..
  }

  val stateMachine = new Area {
    import UartCtrlTxState._

    val state = RegInit(IDLE)
    val parity = Reg(Bool)
    val txd = True
    ..
    switch(state) {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    ..
  }
}

io.txd := RegNext(stateMachine.txd) init(True)
}

```

And here is the complete implementation:

```

class UartCtrlTx(g : UartCtrlGenerics) extends Component {
  import g._

  val io = new Bundle {
    val configFrame = in(UartCtrlFrameConfig(g))
    val samplingTick = in Bool
    val write        = slave Stream (Bits(dataWidthMax bit))
    val txd          = out Bool
  }

  // Provide one clockDivider.tick each rxSamplePerBit pulse of io.samplingTick
  // Used by the stateMachine as a baud rate time reference
  val clockDivider = new Area {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(log2Up(rxSamplePerBit) bits)) init(0)
    val tick = False
    when(io.samplingTick) {
      counter := counter - 1
      tick := counter === 0
    }
  }

  // Count up each clockDivider.tick, used by the state machine to count up data bits,
  ↪and stop bits
  val tickCounter = new Area {
    val value = Reg(UInt(Math.max(dataWidthMax, 2) bit))
    def reset() = value := 0

    when(clockDivider.tick) {
      value := value + 1
    }
  }

  val stateMachine = new Area {
    import UartCtrlTxState._

    val state = RegInit(IDLE)
    val parity = Reg(Bool)
    val txd = True

    when(clockDivider.tick) {
      parity := parity ^ txd
    }

    io.write.ready := False
    switch(state) {
      is(IDLE){
        when(io.write.valid && clockDivider.tick){

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        state := START
    }
}
is(START) {
    txd := False
    when(clockDivider.tick) {
        state := DATA
        parity := io.configFrame.parity === UartParityType.ODD
        tickCounter.reset()
    }
}
is(DATA) {
    txd := io.write.payload(tickCounter.value)
    when(clockDivider.tick) {
        when(tickCounter.value === io.configFrame.dataLength) {
            io.write.ready := True
            tickCounter.reset()
            when(io.configFrame.parity === UartParityType.NONE) {
                state := STOP
            } otherwise {
                state := PARITY
            }
        }
    }
}
is(PARITY) {
    txd := parity
    when(clockDivider.tick) {
        state := STOP
        tickCounter.reset()
    }
}
is(STOP) {
    when(clockDivider.tick) {
        when(tickCounter.value === toBitCount(io.configFrame.stop)) {
            state := io.write.valid ? START | IDLE
        }
    }
}
}

io.txd := RegNext(stateMachine.txd, True)
}

```

## UartCtrlRx

The interfaces of this Component are the following:

Name	Type	Description
configFrame	UartCtrlFrameConfig	Contains data bit width and party/stop bits configurations
samplingTick	Bool	Time reference that pulses rxSamplePerBit times per UART baud
read	Flow[Bits]	Port used by the controller to notify the system about a successfully received frame
rx	Bool	UART rx pin, not synchronized with the current clock domain

Let's define the enumeration that will be used to store the state of UartCtrlTx:

```
object UartCtrlRxState extends SpinalEnum {
  val IDLE, START, DATA, PARITY, STOP = newElement()
}
```

Let's define the skeleton of the UartCtrlRx :

```
class UartCtrlRx(g : UartCtrlGenerics) extends Component {
  import g._
  val io = new Bundle {
    val configFrame = in(UartCtrlFrameConfig(g))
    val samplingTick = in Bool
    val read         = master Flow (Bits(dataWidthMax bit))
    val rx           = in Bool
  }

  // Implement the rx sampling with a majority vote over samplingSize bits
  // Provide a new sampler.value each time sampler.tick is high
  val sampler = new Area {
    val synchroniser = BufferCC(io.rx)
    val samples      = History(that=synchroniser, when=io.samplingTick,
    ↪length=samplingSize)
    val value        = RegNext(MajorityVote(samples))
    val tick         = RegNext(io.samplingTick)
  }

  // Provide a bitTimer.tick each rxSamplePerBit
  // reset() can be called to recenter the counter over a start bit.
  val bitTimer = new Area {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(log2Up(rxSamplePerBit) bit))
    def reset() = counter := preSamplingSize + (samplingSize - 1) / 2 - 1
    val tick = False
    ...
  }

  // Provide bitCounter.value that count up each bitTimer.tick, Used by the state_
  ↪machine to count data bits and stop bits
  // reset() can be called to reset it to zero
  val bitCounter = new Area {
    val value = Reg(UInt(Math.max(dataWidthMax, 2) bit))
    def reset() = value := 0
  }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    ...
}

val stateMachine = new Area {
  import UartCtrlRxState._

  val state    = RegInit(IDLE)
  val parity   = Reg(Bool)
  val shifter  = Reg(io.read.payload)
  ...
  switch(state) {
    ...
  }
}
}

```

And here is the complete implementation:

```

class UartCtrlRx(g : UartCtrlGenerics) extends Component {
  import g._
  val io = new Bundle {
    val configFrame = in(UartCtrlFrameConfig(g))
    val samplingTick = in Bool
    val read         = master Flow (Bits(dataWidthMax bit))
    val rxd          = in Bool
  }

  // Implement the rxd sampling with a majority vote over samplingSize bits
  // Provide a new sampler.value each time sampler.tick is high
  val sampler = new Area {
    val synchroniser = BufferCC(io.rxd)
    val samples      = History(that=synchroniser, when=io.samplingTick,
    ↪length=samplingSize)
    val value        = RegNext(MajorityVote(samples))
    val tick         = RegNext(io.samplingTick)
  }

  // Provide a bitTimer.tick each rxSamplePerBit
  // reset() can be called to recenter the counter over a start bit.
  val bitTimer = new Area {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(log2Up(rxSamplePerBit) bit))
    def reset() = counter := preSamplingSize + (samplingSize - 1) / 2 - 1
    val tick = False
    when(sampler.tick) {
      counter := counter - 1
      when(counter === 0) {
        tick := True
      }
    }
  }

  // Provide bitCounter.value that count up each bitTimer.tick, Used by the state_
  ↪machine to count data bits and stop bits
  // reset() can be called to reset it to zero
  val bitCounter = new Area {
    val value = Reg(UInt(Math.max(dataWidthMax, 2) bit))
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

def reset() = value := 0

when(bitTimer.tick) {
  value := value + 1
}
}

val stateMachine = new Area {
  import UartCtrlRxState._

  val state    = RegInit(IDLE)
  val parity   = Reg(Bool)
  val shifter  = Reg(io.read.payload)

  //Parity calculation
  when(bitTimer.tick) {
    parity := parity ^ sampler.value
  }

  io.read.valid := False
  switch(state) {
    is(IDLE) {
      when(sampler.value === False) {
        state := START
        bitTimer.reset()
      }
    }
    is(START) {
      when(bitTimer.tick) {
        state := DATA
        bitCounter.reset()
        parity := io.configFrame.parity === UartParityType.ODD
        when(sampler.value === True) {
          state := IDLE
        }
      }
    }
    is(DATA) {
      when(bitTimer.tick) {
        shifter(bitCounter.value) := sampler.value
        when(bitCounter.value === io.configFrame.dataLength) {
          bitCounter.reset()
          when(io.configFrame.parity === UartParityType.NONE) {
            state := STOP
          } otherwise {
            state := PARITY
          }
        }
      }
    }
    is(PARITY) {
      when(bitTimer.tick) {
        state := STOP
        bitCounter.reset()
        when(parity /= sampler.value) {
          state := IDLE
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

    }
  }
}
is(STOP) {
  when(bitTimer.tick) {
    when(!sampler.value) {
      state := IDLE
    }.elsewhen(bitCounter.value === toBitCount(io.configFrame.stop)) {
      state := IDLE
      io.read.valid := True
    }
  }
}
}
}
io.read.payload := stateMachine.shifter
}

```

## UartCtrl

Let's write UartCtrl that instantiates the UartCtrlRx and UartCtrlTx parts, generate the clock divider logic, and connect them to each other.

```

class UartCtrl(g : UartCtrlGenerics = UartCtrlGenerics()) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val config = in(UartCtrlConfig(g))
    val write  = slave(Stream(Bits(g.dataWidthMax bit)))
    val read   = master(Flow(Bits(g.dataWidthMax bit)))
    val uart   = master(Uart())
  }

  val tx = new UartCtrlTx(g)
  val rx = new UartCtrlRx(g)

  //Clock divider used by RX and TX
  val clockDivider = new Area {
    val counter = Reg(UInt(g.clockDividerWidth bits)) init(0)
    val tick = counter === 0

    counter := counter - 1
    when(tick) {
      counter := io.config.clockDivider
    }
  }

  tx.io.samplingTick := clockDivider.tick
  rx.io.samplingTick := clockDivider.tick

  tx.io.configFrame := io.config.frame
  rx.io.configFrame := io.config.frame

  tx.io.write << io.write
  rx.io.read >> io.read

  io.uart.txd <> tx.io.txd

```

(continues on next page)

```

io.uart.rxd <> rx.io.rxd
}

```

### Example with test bench

Here is a top level example that does the followings things:

- Instantiate `UartCtrl` and set its configuration to 921600 baud/s, no parity, 1 stop bit.
- Each time a byte is received from the UART, it writes it on the leds output.
- Every 2000 cycles, it sends the switches input value to the UART.

```

class UartCtrlUsageExample extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val uart = master(Uart())
    val switches = in Bits(8 bits)
    val leds = out Bits(8 bits)
  }

  val uartCtrl = new UartCtrl()
  uartCtrl.io.config.setClockDivider(921600)
  uartCtrl.io.config.frame.dataLength := 7 //8 bits
  uartCtrl.io.config.frame.parity := UartParityType.NONE
  uartCtrl.io.config.frame.stop := UartStopType.ONE
  uartCtrl.io.uart <> io.uart

  //Assign io.led with a register loaded each time a byte is received
  io.leds := uartCtrl.io.read.toReg()

  //Write the value of switch on the uart each 2000 cycles
  val write = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
  write.valid := CounterFreeRun(2000).willOverflow
  write.payload := io.switches
  write >-> uartCtrl.io.write
}

object UartCtrlUsageExample{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new UartCtrlUsageExample,
    ↪defaultClockDomainFrequency=FixedFrequency(50e6))
  }
}

```

The following example is just a “mad one” but if you want to send a 0x55 header before sending the value of switches, you can replace the write generator of the preceding example by:

```

val write = Stream(Fragment(Bits(8 bits)))
write.valid := CounterFreeRun(4000).willOverflow
write.fragment := io.switches
write.last := True
write.stage().insertHeader(0x55).toStreamOfFragment >> uartCtrl.io.write

```

Here you can get a simple VHDL testbench for this small `UartCtrlUsageExample`.

### Bonus: Having fun with Stream

If you want to queue data received from the UART:

```
val uartCtrl = new UartCtrl()
val queuedReads = uartCtrl.io.read.toStream.queue(16)
```

If you want to add a queue on the write interface and do some flow control:

```
val uartCtrl = new UartCtrl()
val writeCmd = Stream(Bits(8 bits))
val stopIt = Bool
writeCmd.queue(16).haltWhen(stopIt) >> uartCtrl.io.write
```

## 13.2.3 VGA

### Introduction

VGA interfaces are becoming an endangered species, but implementing a VGA controller is still a good exercise.

An explanation about the VGA protocol can be found [here](#).

This VGA controller tutorial is based on [this](#) implementation.

### Data structures

Before implementing the controller itself we need to define some data structures.

#### RGB color

First, we need a three channel color structure (Red, Green, Blue). This data structure will be used to feed the controller with pixels and also will be used by the VGA bus.

```
case class RgbConfig(rWidth : Int, gWidth : Int, bWidth : Int){
  def getWidth = rWidth + gWidth + bWidth
}

case class Rgb(c: RgbConfig) extends Bundle{
  val r = UInt(c.rWidth bit)
  val g = UInt(c.gWidth bit)
  val b = UInt(c.bWidth bit)
}
```

### VGA bus

io name	Driver	Description
vSync	master	Vertical synchronization, indicate the beginning of a new frame
hSync	master	Horizontal synchronization, indicate the beginning of a new line
colorEn	master	High when the interface is in the visible part
color	master	Carry the color, don't care when colorEn is low

```

case class Vga (rgbConfig: RgbConfig) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave{
  val vSync = Bool
  val hSync = Bool

  val colorEn = Bool
  val color    = Rgb(rgbConfig)

  override def asMaster() : Unit = this.asOutput()
}

```

This Vga Bundle uses the IMasterSlave trait, which allows you to create master/slave VGA interfaces using the following:

```

master(Vga(...))
slave(Vga(...))

```

## VGA timings

The VGA interface is driven by using 8 different timings. Here is one simple example of a Bundle that is able to carry them.

```

case class VgaTimings(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val hSyncStart = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val hSyncEnd   = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val hColorStart = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val hColorEnd   = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val vSyncStart = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val vSyncEnd   = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val vColorStart = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
  val vColorEnd   = UInt(timingsWidth bits)
}

```

But this not a very good way to specify it because it is redundant for vertical and horizontal timings.

Let's write it in a clearer way:

```

case class VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val colorStart = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val colorEnd   = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val syncStart  = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val syncEnd    = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
}

case class VgaTimings(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val h = VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth)
  val v = VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth)
}

```

Then we could add some functions to set these timings for specific resolutions and frame rates:

```

case class VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val colorStart = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val colorEnd   = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val syncStart  = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
  val syncEnd    = UInt(timingsWidth bit)
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

case class VgaTimings(timingsWidth: Int) extends Bundle {
  val h = VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth)
  val v = VgaTimingsHV(timingsWidth)

  def setAs_h640_v480_r60: Unit = {
    h.syncStart := 96 - 1
    h.syncEnd   := 800 - 1
    h.colorStart := 96 + 16 - 1
    h.colorEnd   := 800 - 48 - 1
    v.syncStart := 2 - 1
    v.syncEnd   := 525 - 1
    v.colorStart := 2 + 10 - 1
    v.colorEnd   := 525 - 33 - 1
  }

  def setAs_h64_v64_r60: Unit = {
    h.syncStart := 96 - 1
    h.syncEnd   := 800 - 1
    h.colorStart := 96 + 16 - 1 + 288
    h.colorEnd   := 800 - 48 - 1 - 288
    v.syncStart := 2 - 1
    v.syncEnd   := 525 - 1
    v.colorStart := 2 + 10 - 1 + 208
    v.colorEnd   := 525 - 33 - 1 - 208
  }
}

```

## VGA Controller

### Specification

io name	Di-rec-tion	Description
soft-Reset	in	Reset internal counters and keep the VGA interface inactive
tim-ings	in	Specify VGA horizontal and vertical timings
pixels	slave	Stream of RGB colors that feeds the VGA controller
error	out	High when the pixels stream is too slow
frameS-tart	out	High when a new frame starts
vga	mas-ter	VGA interface

The controller does not integrate any pixel buffering. It directly takes them from the `pixels` Stream and puts them on the `vga.color` out at the right time. If `pixels` is not valid then `error` becomes high for one cycle.

## Component and io definition

Let's define a new `VgaCtrl` Component, which takes as `RgbConfig` and `timingsWidth` as parameters. Let's give the bit width a default value of 12.

```
class VgaCtrl(rgbConfig: RgbConfig, timingsWidth: Int = 12) extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val softReset = in Bool  
    val timings = in(VgaTimings(timingsWidth))  
    val pixels = slave Stream (Rgb(rgbConfig))  
  
    val error = out Bool  
    val frameStart = out Bool  
    val vga = master(Vga(rgbConfig))  
  }  
  ...  
}
```

## Horizontal and vertical logic

The logic that generates horizontal and vertical synchronization signals is quite the same. It kind of resembles ~PWM~. The horizontal one counts up each cycle, while the vertical one use the horizontal synchronization signal as to increment.

Let's define `HVArea`, which represents one ~PWM~ and then instantiate it two times: one for both horizontal and vertical synchronization.

```
class VgaCtrl(rgbConfig: RgbConfig, timingsWidth: Int = 12) extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {...}  
  
  case class HVArea(timingsHV: VgaTimingsHV, enable: Bool) extends Area {  
    val counter = Reg(UInt(timingsWidth bit)) init(0)  
  
    val syncStart = counter === timingsHV.syncStart  
    val syncEnd = counter === timingsHV.syncEnd  
    val colorStart = counter === timingsHV.colorStart  
    val colorEnd = counter === timingsHV.colorEnd  
  
    when(enable) {  
      counter := counter + 1  
      when(syncEnd) {  
        counter := 0  
      }  
    }  
  
    val sync = RegInit(False) setWhen(syncStart) clearWhen(syncEnd)  
    val colorEn = RegInit(False) setWhen(colorStart) clearWhen(colorEnd)  
  
    when(io.softReset) {  
      counter := 0  
      sync := False  
      colorEn := False  
    }  
  }  
  
  val h = HVArea(io.timings.h, True)  
  val v = HVArea(io.timings.v, h.syncEnd)  
}
```

As you can see, it's done by using `Area`. This is to avoid the creation of a new `Component` which would have been much more verbose.

## Interconnections

Now that we have timing generators for horizontal and vertical synchronization, we need to drive the outputs.

```
class VgaCtrl(rgbConfig: RgbConfig, timingsWidth: Int = 12) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {...}

  case class HVArea(timingsHV: VgaTimingsHV, enable: Bool) extends Area {...}
  val h = HVArea(io.timings.h, True)
  val v = HVArea(io.timings.v, h.syncEnd)

  val colorEn = h.colorEn && v.colorEn
  io.pixels.ready := colorEn
  io.error := colorEn && ! io.pixels.valid

  io.frameStart := v.syncEnd

  io.vga.hSync := h.sync
  io.vga.vSync := v.sync
  io.vga.colorEn := colorEn
  io.vga.color := io.pixels.payload
}
```

## Bonus

The `VgaCtrl` that was defined above is generic (not application specific). We can imagine a case where the system provides a `Stream of Fragment of RGB`, which means the system transmits pixels between start/end of picture indications.

In this case we can automatically manage the `softReset` input by asserting it when an error occurs, then wait for the end of the current pixels picture to deassert error.

Let's add a function to `VgaCtrl` that can be called from the parent component to feed `VgaCtrl` by using this `Stream of Fragment of RGB`.

```
class VgaCtrl(rgbConfig: RgbConfig, timingsWidth: Int = 12) extends Component {
  ...
  def feedWith(that : Stream[Fragment[Rgb]]): Unit ={
    io.pixels << that.toStreamOfFragment

    val error = RegInit(False)
    when(io.error){
      error := True
    }
    when(that.isLast){
      error := False
    }

    io.softReset := error
    when(error){
      that.ready := True
    }
  }
}
```

## 13.3 Advanced ones

### 13.3.1 JTAG TAP

#### Introduction

---

**Important:** The goal of this page is to show the implementation of a JTAG TAP (a slave) by a non-conventional way.

---

---

**Important:**

This implementation is not a simple one, it mix object oriented programming, abstract interfaces decoupling, hardware generation and hardware description.

Of course a simple JTAG TAP implementation could be done only with a simple hardware description, but the goal here is really to going forward and creating an very reusable and extensible JTAG TAP generator

---

---

**Important:** This page will not explains how JTAG work. A good tutorial could be find [there](#).

---

One big difference between commonly used HDL and Spinal, is the fact that SpinalHDL allow you to define hardware generators/builders. It's very different than describing hardware. Let's take a look into the example bellow because the difference between generate/build/describing could seem "playing with word" or could be interpreted differently.

The example bellow is a JTAG TAP which allow the JTAG master to read switches/keys inputs and write leds outputs. This TAP could also be recognized by a master by using the UID 0x87654321.

```
class SimpleJtagTap extends Component {  
  val io = new Bundle {  
    val jtag    = slave(Jtag())  
    val switches = in  Bits(8 bit)  
    val keys    = in  Bits(4 bit)  
    val leds     = out Bits(8 bit)  
  }  
  
  val tap = new JtagTap(io.jtag, 8)  
  val idcodeArea = tap.idcode(B"x87654321") (instructionId=4)  
  val switchesArea = tap.read(io.switches)   (instructionId=5)  
  val keysArea    = tap.read(io.keys)        (instructionId=6)  
  val ledsArea    = tap.write(io.leds)       (instructionId=7)  
}
```

As you can see, a JtagTap is created but then some Generator/Builder functions (idcode,read,write) are called to create each JTAG instruction. This is what i call "Hardware generator/builder", then these Generator/Builder are used by the user to describing an hardware. And there is the point, in commonly HDL you can only describe your hardware, which imply many donkey job.

This JTAG TAP tutorial is based on [this](#) implementation.



## JTAG bus

First we need to define a JTAG bus bundle.

```
case class Jtag() extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
  val tms = Bool
  val tdi = Bool
  val tdo = Bool

  override def asMaster() : Unit = {
    out(tdi, tms)
    in(tdo)
  }
}
```

As you can see this bus don't contain the TCK pin because it will be provided by the clock domain.

## JTAG state machine

Let's define the JTAG state machine as explained [here](#)

```
object JtagState extends SpinalEnum {
  val RESET, IDLE,
      IR_SELECT, IR_CAPTURE, IR_SHIFT, IR_EXIT1, IR_PAUSE, IR_EXIT2, IR_UPDATE,
      DR_SELECT, DR_CAPTURE, DR_SHIFT, DR_EXIT1, DR_PAUSE, DR_EXIT2, DR_UPDATE =
    ↪newElement()
}

class JtagFsm(jtag: Jtag) extends Area {
  import JtagState._
  val stateNext = JtagState()
  val state = RegNext(stateNext) randBoot()

  stateNext := state.mux(
    default    -> (jtag.tms ? RESET      | IDLE),           //RESET
    IDLE       -> (jtag.tms ? DR_SELECT  | IDLE),
    IR_SELECT  -> (jtag.tms ? RESET      | IR_CAPTURE),
    IR_CAPTURE -> (jtag.tms ? IR_EXIT1   | IR_SHIFT),
    IR_SHIFT   -> (jtag.tms ? IR_EXIT1   | IR_SHIFT),
    IR_EXIT1   -> (jtag.tms ? IR_UPDATE  | IR_PAUSE),
    IR_PAUSE   -> (jtag.tms ? IR_EXIT2   | IR_PAUSE),
    IR_EXIT2   -> (jtag.tms ? IR_UPDATE  | IR_SHIFT),
    IR_UPDATE  -> (jtag.tms ? DR_SELECT  | IDLE),
    DR_SELECT  -> (jtag.tms ? IR_SELECT  | DR_CAPTURE),
    DR_CAPTURE -> (jtag.tms ? DR_EXIT1   | DR_SHIFT),
    DR_SHIFT   -> (jtag.tms ? DR_EXIT1   | DR_SHIFT),
    DR_EXIT1   -> (jtag.tms ? DR_UPDATE  | DR_PAUSE),
    DR_PAUSE   -> (jtag.tms ? DR_EXIT2   | DR_PAUSE),
    DR_EXIT2   -> (jtag.tms ? DR_UPDATE  | DR_SHIFT),
    DR_UPDATE  -> (jtag.tms ? DR_SELECT  | IDLE)
  )
}
```

**Note:** The randBoot() on state make it initialized with a random state. It's only for simulation purpose.

## JTAG TAP

Let's implement the core of the JTAG TAP, without any instruction, just the base manage the instruction register (IR) and the bypass.

```
class JtagTap(val jtag: Jtag, instructionWidth: Int) extends Area{
  val fsm = new JtagFsm(jtag)
  val instruction = Reg(Bits(instructionWidth bit))
  val instructionShift = Reg(Bits(instructionWidth bit))
  val bypass = Reg(Bool)

  jtag.tdo := bypass

  switch(fsm.state) {
    is(JtagState.IR_CAPTURE) {
      instructionShift := instruction
    }
    is(JtagState.IR_SHIFT) {
      instructionShift := (jtag.tdi ## instructionShift) >> 1
      jtag.tdo := instructionShift.lsb
    }
    is(JtagState.IR_UPDATE) {
      instruction := instructionShift
    }
    is(JtagState.DR_SHIFT) {
      bypass := jtag.tdi
    }
  }
}
```

## Jtag instructions

Now that the JTAG TAP core is done, we can think about how to implement JTAG instructions by an reusable way.

## JTAG TAP class interface

First we need to define how an instruction could interact with the JTAG TAP core. We could of course directly take the JtagTap area, but it's not very nice because in some situation the JTAG TAP core is provided by another IP (Altera virtual JTAG for example).

So let's define a simple and abstract interface between the JTAG TAP core and instructions :

```
trait JtagTapAccess {
  def getTdi : Bool
  def getTms : Bool
  def setTdo(value : Bool) : Unit

  def getState : JtagState.T
  def getInstruction() : Bits
  def setInstruction(value : Bits) : Unit
}
```

Then let's the JtagTap implement this abstract interface :

```
class JtagTap(val jtag: Jtag, ...) extends Area with JtagTapAccess{
  ...
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
//JtagTapAccess impl
override def getTdi: Bool = jtag.tdi
override def setTdo(value: Bool): Unit = jtag.tdo := value
override def getTms: Bool = jtag.tms

override def getState: JtagState.T = fsm.state
override def getInstruction(): Bits = instruction
override def setInstruction(value: Bits): Unit = instruction := value
}
```

## Base class

Let's define a useful base class for JTAG instruction that provide some callback (doCapture/doShift/doUpdate/doReset) depending the selected instruction and the state of the JTAG TAP :

```
class JtagInstruction(tap: JtagTapAccess, val instructionId: Bits) extends Area {
  def doCapture(): Unit = {}
  def doShift(): Unit = {}
  def doUpdate(): Unit = {}
  def doReset(): Unit = {}

  val instructionHit = tap.getInstruction === instructionId

  Component.current.addPrePopTask(() => {
    when(instructionHit) {
      when(tap.getState === JtagState.DR_CAPTURE) {
        doCapture()
      }
      when(tap.getState === JtagState.DR_SHIFT) {
        doShift()
      }
      when(tap.getState === JtagState.DR_UPDATE) {
        doUpdate()
      }
    }
    when(tap.getState === JtagState.RESET) {
      doReset()
    }
  })
}
```

### Note:

About the `Component.current.addPrePopTask(...)` :

This allow you to call the given code at the end of the current component construction. Because of object oriented nature of `JtagInstruction`, `doCapture`, `doShift`, `doUpdate` and `doReset` should not be called before children classes construction (because children classes will use it as a callback to do some logic)

## Read instruction

Let's implement an instruction that allow the JTAG to read a signal.

```
class JtagInstructionRead[T <: Data](data: T) (tap: JtagTapAccess, instructionId: ↵
↵ Bits) extends JtagInstruction(tap, instructionId) {
  val shifter = Reg(Bits(data.getBitsWidth bit))

  override def doCapture(): Unit = {
    shifter := data.asBits
  }

  override def doShift(): Unit = {
    shifter := (tap.getTdi ## shifter) >> 1
    tap.setTdo(shifter.lsb)
  }
}
```

## Write instruction

Let's implement an instruction that allow the JTAG to write a register (and also read its current value).

```
class JtagInstructionWrite[T <: Data](data: T) (tap: JtagTapAccess, instructionId: ↵
↵ Bits) extends JtagInstruction(tap, instructionId) {
  val shifter, store = Reg(Bits(data.getBitsWidth bit))

  override def doCapture(): Unit = {
    shifter := store
  }
  override def doShift(): Unit = {
    shifter := (tap.getTdi ## shifter) >> 1
    tap.setTdo(shifter.lsb)
  }
  override def doUpdate(): Unit = {
    store := shifter
  }

  data.assignFromBits(store)
}
```

## Idcode instruction

Let's implement the instruction that return a idcode to the JTAG and also, when a reset occur, set the instruction register (IR) to it own instructionId.

```
class JtagInstructionIdcode[T <: Data](value: Bits)(tap: JtagTapAccess, ↵
↵ instructionId: Bits) extends JtagInstruction(tap, instructionId) {
  val shifter = Reg(Bits(32 bit))

  override def doShift(): Unit = {
    shifter := (tap.getTdi ## shifter) >> 1
    tap.setTdo(shifter.lsb)
  }

  override def doReset(): Unit = {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    shifter := value
    tap.setInstruction(instructionId)
  }
}

```

### User friendly wrapper

Let's add some user friendly function to the JtagTapAccess to make instructions instantiation easier .

```

trait JtagTapAccess {
  ...

  def idcode(value: Bits)(instructionId: Bits) =
    new JtagInstructionIdcode(value)(this,instructionId)

  def read[T <: Data](data: T)(instructionId: Bits) =
    new JtagInstructionRead(data)(this,instructionId)

  def write[T <: Data](data: T, cleanUpdate: Boolean = true, readable: Boolean = u
    true)(instructionId: Bits) =
    new JtagInstructionWrite[T](data,cleanUpdate,readable)(this,instructionId)
}

```

### Usage demonstration

And there we are, we can now very easily create an application specific JTAG TAP without having to write any logic or any interconnections.

```

class SimpleJtagTap extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val jtag    = slave(Jtag())
    val switchs = in  Bits(8 bit)
    val keys    = in  Bits(4 bit)
    val leds    = out Bits(8 bit)
  }

  val tap = new JtagTap(io.jtag, 8)
  val idcodeArea = tap.idcode(B"x87654321") (instructionId=4)
  val switchsArea = tap.read(io.switchs)    (instructionId=5)
  val keysArea    = tap.read(io.keys)        (instructionId=6)
  val ledsArea    = tap.write(io.leds)       (instructionId=7)
}

```

This way of doing things (Generating hardware) could also be applied to, for example, generating an APB/AHB/AXI bus slave.

## 13.3.2 Memory mapped UART

### Introduction

This example will take the `UartCtrl` component implemented in the previous *example* to create a memory mapped UART controller.

### Specification

The implementation will be based on the APB3 bus with a RX FIFO.

Here is the register mapping table:

Name	Type	Access	Address	Description
clockDivider	UInt	RW	0	Set the UartCtrl clock divider
frame	UartCtrl-Frame-Config	RW	4	Set the dataLength, the parity and the stop bit configuration
writeCmd	Bits	W	8	Send a write command to UartCtrl
write-Busy	Bool	R	8	Bit 0 => zero when a new writeCmd can be sent
read	Bool / Bits	R	12	Bits 7 downto 0 => rx payload Bit 31 => rx payload valid

### Implementation

For this implementation, the `Apb3SlaveFactory` tool will be used. It allows you to define a APB3 slave with a nice syntax. You can find the documentation of this tool *there*.

First, we just need to define the `Apb3Config` that will be used for the controller. It is defined in a Scala object as a function to be able to get it from everywhere.

```
object Apb3UartCtrl{
  def getApb3Config = Apb3Config(
    addressWidth = 4,
    dataWidth    = 32
  )
}
```

Then we can define a `Apb3UartCtrl` component which instantiates a `UartCtrl` and creates the memory mapping logic between it and the APB3 bus:



```

class Apb3UartCtrl(uartCtrlConfig : UartCtrlGenerics, rxFifoDepth : Int) extends Component {
  val io = new Bundle {
    val bus = slave(Apb3(Apb3UartCtrl.getApb3Config))
    val uart = master(Uart())
  }

  // Instantiate an simple uart controller
  val uartCtrl = new UartCtrl(uartCtrlConfig)
  io.uart <-> uartCtrl.io.uart

  // Create an instance of the Apb3SlaveFactory that will then be used as a slave
  factory driven by io.bus
  val busCtrl = Apb3SlaveFactory(io.bus)

  // Ask the busCtrl to create a readable/writable register at the address 0
  // and drive uartCtrl.io.config.clockDivider with this register
  busCtrl.driveAndRead(uartCtrl.io.config.clockDivider, address = 0)

  // Do the same thing than above but for uartCtrl.io.config.frame at the address 4
  busCtrl.driveAndRead(uartCtrl.io.config.frame, address = 4)

  // Ask the busCtrl to create a writable Flow[Bits] (valid/payload) at the address 8.
  // Then convert it into a stream and connect it to the uartCtrl.io.write by using
  an register stage (>->)
  busCtrl.createAndDriveFlow(Bits(uartCtrlConfig.dataWidthMax bits), address = 8).
  toStream >-> uartCtrl.io.write

  // To avoid losing writes commands between the Flow to Stream transformation just
  above,
  // make the occupancy of the uartCtrl.io.write readable at address 8
  busCtrl.read(uartCtrl.io.write.valid, address = 8)

  // Take uartCtrl.io.read, convert it into a Stream, then connect it to the input of
  a FIFO of 64 elements
  // Then make the output of the FIFO readable at the address 12 by using a non
  blocking protocol
  // (Bit 7 downto 0 => read data <br> Bit 31 => read data valid )
  busCtrl.readStreamNonBlocking(uartCtrl.io.read.toStream.queue(rxFifoDepth),
    address = 12, validBitOffset = 31, payloadBitOffset =
  0)

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}
```

---

**Important:**

Yes, that's all it takes. It's also synthesizable.

The Apb3SlaveFactory tool is not something hard-coded into the SpinalHDL compiler. It's something implemented with SpinalHDL regular hardware description syntax.

---

### 13.3.3 Pinesec

Remember to add it

### 13.3.4 Timer

#### Introduction

A timer module is probably one of the most basic pieces of hardware. But even for a timer, there are some interesting things that you can do with SpinalHDL. This example will define a simple timer component which integrates a bus bridging utility.

#### Timer

So let's start with the Timer component.

#### Specification

The Timer component will have a single construction parameter:

Parameter Name	Type	Description
width	Int	Specify the bit width of the timer counter

And also some inputs/outputs:

IO Name	Direction	Type	Description
tick	in	Bool	When <code>tick</code> is True, the timer count up until <code>limit</code> .
clear	in	Bool	When <code>tick</code> is True, the timer is set to zero. <code>clear</code> has priority over <code>tick</code> .
limit	in	UInt(width bits)	When the timer value is equal to <code>limit</code> , the <code>tick</code> input is inhibited.
full	out	Bool	<code>full</code> is high when the timer value is equal to <code>limit</code> and <code>tick</code> is high.
value	out	UInt(width bits)	Wire out the timer counter value.



## Implementation

```

case class Timer(width : Int) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val tick      = in Bool
    val clear     = in Bool
    val limit     = in UInt(width bits)

    val full      = out Bool
    val value     = out UInt(width bits)
  }

  val counter = Reg(UInt(width bits))
  when(io.tick && !io.full){
    counter := counter + 1
  }
  when(io.clear){
    counter := 0
  }

  io.full := counter === io.limit && io.tick
  io.value := counter
}

```

## Bridging function

Now we can start with the main purpose of this example: defining a bus bridging function. To do that we will use two techniques:

- Using the BusSlaveFactory tool documented [here](#)
- Defining a function inside the Timer component which can be called from the parent component to drive the Timer's IO in an abstract way.

## Specification

This bridging function will take the following parameters:

Parameter Name	Type	Description
busCtrl	Bus-Slave-Fac-tory	The BusSlaveFactory instance that will be used by the function to create the bridging logic.
baseAddress	Big-Int	The base address where the bridging logic should be mapped.
ticks	Seq[Bool]	A list of Bool sources that can be used as a tick signal.
clears	Seq[Bool]	A list of Bool sources that can be used as a clear signal.

The register mapping assumes that the bus system is 32 bits wide:

Name	Access	Width	Address offset	Bit offset	Description
ticksEnable	RW	len(ticks)	0	0	Each ticks bool can be activated if the corresponding ticksEnable bit is high.
clearsEnable	RW	len(clears)	16	0	Each clears bool can be activated if the corresponding clearsEnable bit is high.
limit	RW	width	4	0	Access the limit value of the timer component. When this register is written to, the timer is cleared.
value	R	width	8	0	Access the value of the timer.
clear	W		8		When this register is written to, it clears the timer.

## Implementation

Let's add this bridging function inside the Timer component.

```

case class Timer(width : Int) extends Component{
  val io = new Bundle{
    val tick      = in Bool
    val clear     = in Bool
    val limit     = in UInt(width bits)

    val full      = out Bool
    val value     = out UInt(width bits)
  }

  // Logic previously defined
  // ....

  // The function prototype uses Scala currying funcName(arg1,arg2)(arg3,arg3)
  // which allow to call the function with a nice syntax later
  // This function also returns an area, which allows to keep names of inner signals,
  // in the generated VHDL/Verilog.
  def driveFrom(busCtrl : BusSlaveFactory, baseAddress : BigInt)(ticks : Seq[Bool],
    clears : Seq[Bool]) = new Area {
    //Address 0 => clear/tick masks + bus
    val ticksEnable = busCtrl.createReadWrite(Bits(ticks.length bits), baseAddress +
    0, 0) init(0)
    val clearsEnable = busCtrl.createReadWrite(Bits(clears.length bits), baseAddress +
    0, 16) init(0)
    val busClearing = False

    io.clear := (clearsEnable & clears.asBits).orR | busClearing
    io.tick  := (ticksEnable & ticks.asBits).orR

    //Address 4 => read/write limit (+ auto clear)
    busCtrl.driveAndRead(io.limit, baseAddress + 4)
    busClearing setWhen(busCtrl.isWriting(baseAddress + 4))

    //Address 8 => read timer value / write => clear timer value
    busCtrl.read(io.value, baseAddress + 8)
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    busClearing setWhen(busCtrl.isWriting(baseAddress + 8))
  }
}

```

## Usage

Here is some demonstration code which is very close to the one used in the Pinsec SoC timer module. Basically it instantiates following elements:

- One 16 bit prescaler
- One 32 bit timer
- Three 16 bit timers

Then by using an `Apb3SlaveFactory` and functions defined inside the Timers, it creates bridging logic between the APB3 bus and all instantiated components.

```

val io = new Bundle{
  val apb = Apb3(ApbConfig(addressWidth = 8, dataWidth = 32))
  val interrupt = in Bool
  val external = new Bundle{
    val tick = Bool
    val clear = Bool
  }
}

//Prescaler is very similar to the timer, it mainly integrates a piece of auto reload
↪logic.
val prescaler = Prescaler(width = 16)

val timerA = Timer(width = 32)
val timerB, timerC, timerD = Timer(width = 16)

val busCtrl = Apb3SlaveFactory(io.apb)
val prescalerBridge = prescaler.driveFrom(busCtrl, 0x00)

val timerABridge = timerA.driveFrom(busCtrl, 0x40)(
  // The first element is True, which allows you to have a mode where the timer is
↪always counting up.
  ticks = List(True, prescaler.io.overflow),
  // By looping the timer full to the clears, it allows you to create an autoreload
↪mode.
  clears = List(timerA.io.full)
)

val timerBBridge = timerB.driveFrom(busCtrl, 0x50)(
  //The external.tick could allow to create an impulsion counter mode
  ticks = List(True, prescaler.io.overflow, io.external.tick),
  //external.clear could allow to create an timeout mode.
  clears = List(timerB.io.full, io.external.clear)
)

val timerCBridge = timerC.driveFrom(busCtrl, 0x60)(
  ticks = List(True, prescaler.io.overflow, io.external.tick),
  clears = List(timerC.io.full, io.external.clear)
)

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
val timerDBridge = timerD.driveFrom(busCtrl,0x70)(
  ticks = List(True, prescaler.io.overflow, io.external.tick),
  clears = List(timerD.io.full, io.external.clear)
)

val interruptCtrl = InterruptCtrl(4)
val interruptCtrlBridge = interruptCtrl.driveFrom(busCtrl,0x10)
interruptCtrl.io.inputs(0) := timerA.io.full
interruptCtrl.io.inputs(1) := timerB.io.full
interruptCtrl.io.inputs(2) := timerC.io.full
interruptCtrl.io.inputs(3) := timerD.io.full
io.interrupt := interruptCtrl.io.pendings.orR
```

## 13.4 Introduction

Examples are split in tree kinds:

- Simple ones that could be used to get used to the basics of SpinalHDL.
- Intermediates ones which implement components by using a traditional approach.
- Advanced ones which go further than traditional HDL by using object oriented programming, functional programming, and meta-hardware description.

They are all accessible in the sidebar under the corresponding sections.

---

**Important:** The SpinalHDL workshop contains many labs with their solutions. See [here](#).

---

---

**Note:** You can also find a list of repositories using SpinalHDL [there](#)

---

## 14.1 RiscV

**Warning:** This page document the first RISC-V cpu iteration done in SpinalHDL. The second iteration of this CPU is available [there](#) and already offer better performance/area/features.

### 14.1.1 Features

#### RISC-V CPU

- Pipelined on 5 stages (Fetch Decode Execute0 Execute1 WriteBack)
- Multiple branch prediction modes : (disable, static or dynamic)
- Data path parameterizable between fully bypassed to fully interlocked

#### Extensions

- One cycle multiplication
- 34 cycle division
- Iterative shifter (N shift -> N cycles)
- Single cycle shifter
- Interruption controller
- Debugging module (with JTAG bridge, openOCD port and GDB)
- Instruction cache with wrapped burst memory interface, one way
- Data cache with instructions to evict/flush the whole cache or a given address, one way

#### Performance/Area (on cyclone II)

- small core -> 846 LE, 0.6 DMIPS/Mhz
- debug module (without JTAG) -> 240 LE
- JTAG Avalon master -> 238 LE
- big core with MUL/DIV/Full shifter/IS/Interrupt/Debug -> 2200 LE, 1.15 DMIPS/Mhz, at least 100 Mhz (with default synthesis option)

### 14.1.2 Base FPGA project

You can find a DE1-SOC project which integrate two instance of the CPU with MUL/DIV/Full shifter/IS/Interrupt/Debug there :

<https://drive.google.com/drive/folders/0B-CqLXDTaMbKNkktb2k3T3lzcUk?usp=sharing>

CPU/JTAG/VGA IP are pre-generated. Quartus Prime : 15.1.

### 14.1.3 How to generate the CPU VHDL

**Warning:** This avalon version of the CPU isn't present in recent releases of SpinalHDL. Please considerate the [VexRiscv](#) instead.

### 14.1.4 How to debug

You can find the openOCD fork there :

[https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd\\_riscv](https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd_riscv)

An example target configuration file could be find there :

[https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd\\_riscv/blob/riscv\\_spinal/tcl/target/riscv\\_spinal.cfg](https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd_riscv/blob/riscv_spinal/tcl/target/riscv_spinal.cfg)

Then you can use the RISCv GDB.

### 14.1.5 Todo

- Documentation
- Optimise instruction/data caches FMax by moving line hit condition forward into combinatorial paths.

Contact [spinalhdl@gmail.com](mailto:spinalhdl@gmail.com) for more information

## 14.2 pinsec

### 14.2.1 Hardware

#### Introduction

There is the Pinsec toplevel hardware diagram :



## RISCV

The RISCV is a 5 stage pipelined CPU with following features :

- Instruction cache
- Single cycle Barrel shifter
- Single cycle MUL, 34 cycle DIV
- Interruption support
- Dynamic branch prediction
- Debug port

## AXI4

As previously said, Pinsec integrate an AXI4 bus fabric. AXI4 is not the easiest bus on the Earth but has many advantages like :

- A flexible topology
- High bandwidth potential
- Potential out of order request completion
- Easy methods to meets clocks timings
- Standard used by many IP
- An hand-shaking methodology that fit with SpinalHDL Stream.

From an Area utilization perspective, AXI4 is for sure not the lightest solution, but some techniques could dramatically reduce that issue :

- Using Read-Only/Write-Only AXI4 variations where it's possible
- Introducing an Axi4-Shared variation where a new ARW channel is introduced to replace AR and AW channels. This solution divide resources usage by two for the address decoding and the address arbitration.
- Depending the interconnect implementation, if masters doesn't use the R/B channels ready, this path will be removed until each slaves at synthesis, which relax timings.
- As the AXI4 spec suggest, the interconnect can expand the transactions ID by aggregating the corresponding input port id. This allow the interconnect to have an infinite number of pending request and also to support out of order completion with a negligible area cost (transaction id expand).

The Pinsec interconnect doesn't introduce latency cycles.

### APB3

In Pinsec, all peripherals implement an APB3 bus to be interfaced. The APB3 choice was motivated by following reasons :

- Very simple bus (no burst)
- Use very few resources
- Standard used by many IP

### Generate the RTL

To generate the RTL, you have multiple solutions :

You can download the SpinalHDL source code, and then run :

```
sbt "project SpinalHDL-lib" "run-main spinal.lib.soc.pinsec.Pinsec"
```

Or you can create your own main into your own SBT project and then run it :

```
import spinal.lib.soc.pinsec._

object PinsecMain{
  def main(args: Array[String]) {
    SpinalVhdl(new Pinsec(100 MHz))
    SpinalVerilog(new Pinsec(100 MHz))
  }
}
```

---

**Note:** Currently, only the verilog version was tested in simulation and in FPGA because the last release of GHDL is not compatible with cocotb.

---

## 14.2.2 SoC toplevel (Pinsec)

### Introduction

Pinsec is a little SoC designed for FPGA. It is available in the SpinalHDL library and some documentation could be find *there*

Its toplevel implementation is an interesting example, because it mix some design pattern that make it very easy to modify. Adding a new master or a new peripheral to the bus fabric could be done in the seconde.

This toplevel implementation could be consulted there : <https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalHDL/blob/master/lib/src/main/scala/spinal/lib/soc/pinsec/Pinsec.scala>



There is the Pinsec toplevel hardware diagram :



## Defining all IO

```
val io = new Bundle{
  //Clocks / reset
  val asyncReset = in Bool
  val axiClk      = in Bool
  val vgaClk      = in Bool

  //Main components IO
  val jtag        = slave(Jtag())
  val sram        = master(SdramInterface(IS42x320D.layout))

  //Peripherals IO
  val gpioA       = master(TriStateArray(32 bits)) //Each pin has it's individual
  //output enable control
  val gpioB       = master(TriStateArray(32 bits))
  val uart        = master(Uart())
  val vga         = master(Vga(RgbConfig(5,6,5)))
}
```

## Clock and resets

Pinsec has three clocks inputs :

- axiClock
- vgaClock
- jtag.tck

And one reset input :

- asyncReset

Which will finally give 5 ClockDomain (clock/reset couple) :

Name	Clock	Description
resetCtrlClockDomain	axi-Clock	Used by the reset controller, Flops of this clock domain are initialized by the FPGA bitstream
axiClockDomain	axi-Clock	Used by all component connected to the AXI and the APB interconnect
coreClockDomain	axi-Clock	The only difference with the axiClockDomain, is the fact that the reset could also be asserted by the debug module
vgaClockDomain	vga-Clock	Used by the VGA controller backend as a pixel clock
jtagClockDomain	jtag.tck	Used to clock the frontend of the JTAG controller

## Reset controller

First we need to define the reset controller clock domain, which has no reset wire, but use the FPGA bitstream loading to setup flipflops.

```
val resetCtrlClockDomain = ClockDomain(
  clock = io.axiClk,
  config = ClockDomainConfig(
    resetKind = BOOT
  )
)
```

Then we can define a simple reset controller under this clock domain.

```
val resetCtrl = new ClockingArea(resetCtrlClockDomain) {
  val axiResetUnbuffered = False
  val coreResetUnbuffered = False

  //Implement an counter to keep the reset axiResetOrder high 64 cycles
  // Also this counter will automaticly do a reset when the system boot.
  val axiResetCounter = Reg(UInt(6 bits)) init(0)
  when(axiResetCounter /= U(axiResetCounter.range -> true)){
    axiResetCounter := axiResetCounter + 1
    axiResetUnbuffered := True
  }
  when(BufferCC(io.asyncReset)){
    axiResetCounter := 0
  }

  //When an axiResetOrder happen, the core reset will as well
  when(axiResetUnbuffered){
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    coreResetUnbuffered := True
  }

  //Create all reset used later in the design
  val axiReset  = RegNext(axiResetUnbuffered)
  val coreReset = RegNext(coreResetUnbuffered)
  val vgaReset  = BufferCC(axiResetUnbuffered)
}

```

## Systems clock domains

Now that the reset controller is implemented, we can define clock domain for all part of Pinsec :

```

val axiClockDomain = ClockDomain(
  clock    = io.axiClk,
  reset    = resetCtrl.axiReset,
  frequency = FixedFrequency(50 MHz) //The frequency information is used by the SDRAM
  ↪controller
)

val coreClockDomain = ClockDomain(
  clock = io.axiClk,
  reset = resetCtrl.coreReset
)

val vgaClockDomain = ClockDomain(
  clock = io.vgaClk,
  reset = resetCtrl.vgaReset
)

val jtagClockDomain = ClockDomain(
  clock = io.jtag.tck
)

```

Also all the core system of Pinsec will be defined into a axi clocked area :

```

val axi = new ClockingArea(axiClockDomain) {
  //Here will come the rest of Pinsec
}

```

## Main components

Pinsec is constituted mainly by 4 main components :

- One RISC-V CPU
- One SDRAM controller
- One on chip memory
- One JTAG controller

## RISCV CPU

The RISCV CPU used in Pinsec as many parametrization possibilities :

```
val core = coreClockDomain {
  val coreConfig = CoreConfig(
    pcWidth = 32,
    addrWidth = 32,
    startAddress = 0x00000000,
    regFileReadyKind = sync,
    branchPrediction = dynamic,
    bypassExecute0 = true,
    bypassExecute1 = true,
    bypassWriteBack = true,
    bypassWriteBackBuffer = true,
    collapseBubble = false,
    fastFetchCmdPcCalculation = true,
    dynamicBranchPredictorCacheSizeLog2 = 7
  )

  //The CPU has a systems of plugin which allow to add new feature into the core.
  //Those extension are not directly implemented into the core, but are kind of
  ↳ additive logic patch defined in a separated area.
  coreConfig.add(new MulExtension)
  coreConfig.add(new DivExtension)
  coreConfig.add(new BarrelShifterFullExtension)

  val iCacheConfig = InstructionCacheConfig(
    cacheSize = 4096,
    bytePerLine = 32,
    wayCount = 1, //Can only be one for the moment
    wrappedMemAccess = true,
    addressWidth = 32,
    cpuDataWidth = 32,
    memDataWidth = 32
  )

  //There is the instanciation of the CPU by using all those construction parameters
  new RiscvAxi4(
    coreConfig = coreConfig,
    iCacheConfig = iCacheConfig,
    dCacheConfig = null,
    debug = true,
    interruptCount = 2
  )
}
```

## On chip RAM

The instantiation of the AXI4 on chip RAM is very simple.

In fact it's not an AXI4 but an Axi4Shared, which mean that a ARW channel replace the AR and AW ones. This solution use less area while being fully interoperable with full AXI4.

```
val ram = Axi4SharedOnChipRam(
  dataWidth = 32,
  byteCount = 4 kB,
  idWidth = 4    //Specify the AXI4 ID width.
)
```

## SDRAM controller

First you need to define the layout and timings of your SDRAM device. On the DE1-SOC, the SDRAM device is an IS42x320D one.

```
object IS42x320D {
  def layout = SdramLayout(
    bankWidth    = 2,
    columnWidth  = 10,
    rowWidth     = 13,
    dataWidth    = 16
  )

  def timingGrade7 = SdramTimings(
    bootRefreshCount = 8,
    tPOW             = 100 us,
    tREF              = 64 ms,
    tRC               = 60 ns,
    tRFC              = 60 ns,
    tRAS              = 37 ns,
    tRP               = 15 ns,
    tRCD              = 15 ns,
    cMRD              = 2,
    tWR               = 10 ns,
    cWR               = 1
  )
}
```

Then you can used those definition to parametrize the SDRAM controller instantiation.

```
val sdramCtrl = Axi4SharedSdramCtrl(
  axiDataWidth = 32,
  axiIdWidth   = 4,
  layout       = IS42x320D.layout,
  timing       = IS42x320D.timingGrade7,
  CAS          = 3
)
```

### JTAG controller

The JTAG controller could be used to access memories and debug the CPU from an PC.

```
val jtagCtrl = JtagAxi4SharedDebugger(SystemDebuggerConfig(  
    memAddressWidth = 32,  
    memDataWidth    = 32,  
    remoteCmdWidth  = 1,  
    jtagClockDomain = jtagClockDomain  
))
```

### Peripherals

Pinsec integrate some peripherals :

- GPIO
- Timer
- UART
- VGA

#### GPIO

```
val gpioActrl = Apb3Gpio(  
    gpioWidth = 32  
)  
  
val gpioBctrl = Apb3Gpio(  
    gpioWidth = 32  
)
```

#### Timer

The Pinsec timer module is constituted of :

- One prescaler
- One 32 bits timer
- Three 16 bits timers

All of them are packed into the PinsecTimerCtrl component.

```
val timerCtrl = PinsecTimerCtrl()
```

## UART controller

First we need to define a configuration for our UART controller :

```
val uartCtrlConfig = UartCtrlMemoryMappedConfig(
  uartCtrlConfig = UartCtrlGenerics(
    dataWidthMax      = 8,
    clockDividerWidth = 20,
    preSamplingSize    = 1,
    samplingSize       = 5,
    postSamplingSize   = 2
  ),
  txFifoDepth = 16,
  rxFifoDepth = 16
)
```

Then we can use it to instantiate the UART controller

```
val uartCtrl = Apb3UartCtrl(uartCtrlConfig)
```

## VGA controller

First we need to define a configuration for our VGA controller :

```
val vgaCtrlConfig = Axi4VgaCtrlGenerics(
  axiAddressWidth = 32,
  axiDataWidth    = 32,
  burstLength     = 8,           //In Axi words
  frameSizeMax    = 2048*1512*2, //In byte
  fifoSize        = 512,        //In axi words
  rgbConfig       = RgbConfig(5,6,5),
  vgaClock        = vgaClockDomain
)
```

Then we can use it to instantiate the VGA controller

```
val vgaCtrl = Axi4VgaCtrl(vgaCtrlConfig)
```

## Bus interconnects

There is three interconnections components :

- AXI4 crossbar
- AXI4 to APB3 bridge
- APB3 decoder

## AXI4 to APB3 bridge

This bridge will be used to connect low bandwidth peripherals to the AXI crossbar.

```
val apbBridge = Axi4SharedToApb3Bridge(  
  addressWidth = 20,  
  dataWidth    = 32,  
  idWidth      = 4  
)
```

## AXI4 crossbar

The AXI4 crossbar that interconnect AXI4 masters and slaves together is generated by using an factory. The concept of this factory is to create it, then call many function on it to configure it, and finally call the `build` function to ask the factory to generate the corresponding hardware :

```
val axiCrossbar = Axi4CrossbarFactory()  
// Where you will have to call function the the axiCrossbar factory to populate its  
↳ configuration  
axiCrossbar.build()
```

First you need to populate slaves interfaces :

```
//      Slave -> (base address, size) ,  
  
axiCrossbar.addSlaves(  
  ram.io.axi      -> (0x00000000L, 4 kB),  
  sdramCtrl.io.axi -> (0x40000000L, 64 MB),  
  apbBridge.io.axi -> (0xF0000000L, 1 MB)  
)
```

Then you need to populate interconnections between slaves and masters :

```
//      Master -> List of slaves which are accessible  
  
axiCrossbar.addConnections(  
  core.io.i      -> List(ram.io.axi, sdramCtrl.io.axi),  
  core.io.d      -> List(ram.io.axi, sdramCtrl.io.axi, apbBridge.io.axi),  
  jtagCtrl.io.axi -> List(ram.io.axi, sdramCtrl.io.axi, apbBridge.io.axi),  
  vgaCtrl.io.axi  -> List(      sdramCtrl.io.axi)  
)
```

Then to reduce combinatorial path length and have a good design FMax, you can ask the factory to insert pipelining stages between itself a given master or slave :

---

### Note:

`halfPipe / >> / << / >/>` in the following code are provided by the Stream bus library.

Some documentation could be find *there*. In short, it's just some pipelining and interconnection stuff.

---

```
//Pipeline the connection between the crossbar and the apbBridge.io.axi  
axiCrossbar.addPipelining(apbBridge.io.axi, (crossbar, bridge) => {  
  crossbar.sharedCmd.halfPipe() >> bridge.sharedCmd  
  crossbar.writeData.halfPipe() >> bridge.writeData  
  crossbar.writeRsp           << bridge.writeRsp  
})
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

    crossbar.readRsp          << bridge.readRsp
  })

//Pipeline the connection between the crossbar and the sdramCtrl.io.axi
  axiCrossbar.addPipelining(sdramCtrl.io.axi, (crossbar, ctrl) => {
    crossbar.sharedCmd.halfPipe() >> ctrl.sharedCmd
    crossbar.writeData          >/-> ctrl.writeData
    crossbar.writeRsp           << ctrl.writeRsp
    crossbar.readRsp            << ctrl.readRsp
  })

```

## APB3 decoder

The interconnection between the APB3 bridge and all peripherals is done via an APB3Decoder :

```

val apbDecoder = Apb3Decoder(
  master = apbBridge.io.apb,
  slaves = List(
    gpioACtrl.io.apb -> (0x000000, 4 kB),
    gpioBCtrl.io.apb -> (0x010000, 4 kB),
    uartCtrl.io.apb  -> (0x100000, 4 kB),
    timerCtrl.io.apb -> (0x200000, 4 kB),
    vgaCtrl.io.apb   -> (0x300000, 4 kB),
    core.io.debugBus -> (0xF00000, 4 kB)
  )
)

```

## Misc

To connect all toplevel IO to components, the following code is required :

```

io.gpioA <> axi.gpioACtrl.io.gpio
io.gpioB <> axi.gpioBCtrl.io.gpio
io.jtag  <> axi.jtagCtrl.io.jtag
io.uart  <> axi.uartCtrl.io.uart
io.sdram <> axi.sdramCtrl.io.sdram
io.vga   <> axi.vgaCtrl.io.vga

```

And finally some connections between components are required like interrupts and core debug module resets

```

core.io.interrupt(0) := uartCtrl.io.interrupt
core.io.interrupt(1) := timerCtrl.io.interrupt

core.io.debugResetIn := resetCtrl.axiReset
when(core.io.debugResetOut){
  resetCtrl.coreResetUnbuffered := True
}

```

### 14.2.3 Introduction

---

**Note:** This page document the SoC implemented with the first RISC-V cpu iteration done in SpinalHDL. The second iteration of this SoC (and CPU) is available [there](#) and offer better performance/area/features.

---

#### Introduction

Pinsec is the name of a little FPGA SoC fully written in SpinalHDL. Goals of this project are multiple :

- Prove that SpinalHDL is a viable HDL alternative in non-trivial projects.
- Show advantage of SpinalHDL meta-hardware description capabilities in a concrete project.
- Provide a fully open source SoC.

Pinsec has followings hardware features:

- AXI4 interconnect for high speed busses
- APB3 interconnect for peripherals
- RISC-V CPU with instruction cache, MUL/DIV extension and interrupt controller
- JTAG bridge to load binaries and debug the CPU
- SDRAM SDR controller
- On chip ram
- One UART controller
- One VGA controller
- Some timer module
- Some GPIO

The toplevel code explanation could be find [there](#)

#### Board support

A DE1-SOC FPGA project can be find [there](#) with some demo binaries.

### 14.2.4 Software

#### RISC-V tool-chain

Binaries executed by the CPU can be defined in ASM/C/C++ and compiled by the GCC RISC-V fork. Also, to load binaries and debug the CPU, an OpenOCD fork and RISC-V GDB can be used.

RISC-V tools : <https://github.com/riscv/riscv-wiki/wiki/RISC-V-Software-Status>

OpenOCD fork : [https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd\\_riscv](https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd_riscv)

Software examples : <https://github.com/Dolu1990/pinsecSoftware>

## OpenOCD/GDB/Eclipse configuration

About the OpenOCD fork, there is the configuration file that could be used to connect the Pinsec SoC : [https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd\\_riscv/blob/riscv\\_spinal/tcl/target/riscv\\_spinal.cfg](https://github.com/Dolu1990/openocd_riscv/blob/riscv_spinal/tcl/target/riscv_spinal.cfg)

There is an example of arguments used to run the OpenOCD tool :

```
openocd -f ../tcl/interface/ftdi/ft2232h_breakout.cfg -f ../tcl/target/riscv_spinal.  
↪cfg -d 3
```

To debug with eclipse, you will need the Zynlin plugin and then create an “Zynlin embedded debug (native)”.

Initialize commands :

```
target remote localhost:3333  
monitor reset halt  
load
```

Run commands :

```
continue
```



## DEVELOPERS AREA

### 15.1 Bus Slave Factory Implementation

#### 15.1.1 Introduction

This page will document the implementation of the BusSlaveFactory tool and one of those variant. You can get more information about the functionality of that tool [there](#).

#### 15.1.2 Specification

The class diagram is the following :



The BusSlaveFactory abstract class define minimum requirements that each implementation of it should provide :

Name	Description
busDataWidth	Return the data width of the bus
read(that,address,bitOffset)	Read the bus read the address, fill the response with that at bitOffset
write(that,address,bitOffset)	Write the bus write the address, assign that with bus's data from bitOffset
on-Write(address)(doThat)	Call doThat when a write transaction occur on address
on-Read(address)(doThat)	Call doThat when a read transaction occur on address
nonStop-Write(that,bitOffset)	Permanently assign that by the bus write data from bitOffset

By using them the BusSlaveFactory should also be able to provide many utilities :

Name	Re- turn	Description
readAnd-Write(that,address,bitOffset)		Make that readable and writable at address and placed at bitOffset in the word
readMulti-Word(that,address)		Create the memory mapping to read that from 'address'. : If that is bigger than one word it extends the register on followings addresses
writeMulti-Word(that,address)		Create the memory mapping to write that at 'address'. : If that is bigger than one word it extends the register on followings addresses
createWriteOnly(dataType,address,bitOffset)	T	Create a write only register of type dataType at address and placed at bitOffset in the word
createRead-Write(dataType,address,bitOffset)	T	Create a read write register of type dataType at address and placed at bitOffset in the word
create-AndDrive-Flow(dataType,address,bitOffset)	Flow[T]	Create a writable Flow register of type dataType at address and placed at bitOffset in the word
drive(that,address,bitOffset)		Drive that with a register writable at address placed at bitOffset in the word
driveAndRead(that,address,bitOffset)		Drive that with a register writable and readable at address placed at bitOffset in the word
drive-Flow(that,address,bitOffset)		Emit on that a transaction when a write happen at address by using data placed at bitOffset in the word
readStreamNonBlocking(that,address,validBitOffset,payloadBitOffset)		Read that and consume the transaction when a read happen at address. valid <= validBitOffset bit payload <= payloadBitOffset+widthOf(payload) downto payloadBitOffset
doBitsAccumulationAndClearOnRead(that,address,bitOffset)		Instantiate an internal register which at each cycle do : reg := reg   that Then when a read occur, the register is cleared. This register is readable at address and placed at bitOffset in the word

About `BusSlaveFactoryDelayed`, it's still an abstract class, but it capture each primitives (`BusSlaveFactoryElement`) calls into a data-model. This datamodel is one list that contain all primitives, but also a `HashMap` that link each address used to a list of primitives that are using it. Then when they all are collected (at the end of the current component), it do a callback that should be implemented by classes that extends it. The implementation of this callback should implement the hardware corresponding to all primitives collected.

### 15.1.3 Implementation

#### BusSlaveFactory

Let's describe primitives abstract function :

```
trait BusSlaveFactory extends Area{

  def busDataWidth : Int

  def read(that : Data,
           address : BigInt,
           bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit

  def write(that : Data,
            address : BigInt,
            bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit

  def onWrite(address : BigInt)(doThat : => Unit) : Unit
  def onRead (address : BigInt)(doThat : => Unit) : Unit

  def nonStopWrite( that : Data,
                    bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit

  //...
}
```

Then let's operate the magic to implement all utile based on them :

```
trait BusSlaveFactory extends Area{
  //...
  def readAndWrite(that : Data,
                   address: BigInt,
                   bitOffset : Int = 0): Unit = {
    write(that,address,bitOffset)
    read(that,address,bitOffset)
  }

  def drive(that : Data,
            address : BigInt,
            bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit = {
    val reg = Reg(that)
    write(reg,address,bitOffset)
    that := reg
  }

  def driveAndRead(that : Data,
                   address : BigInt,
                   bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit = {
    val reg = Reg(that)
    write(reg,address,bitOffset)
    read(reg,address,bitOffset)
    that := reg
  }

  def driveFlow[T <: Data](that : Flow[T],
                           address: BigInt,
                           bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit = {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    that.valid := False
    onWrite(address){
        that.valid := True
    }
    nonStopWrite(that.payload,bitOffset)
}

def createReadWrite[T <: Data](dataType: T,
                                address: BigInt,
                                bitOffset : Int = 0): T = {
    val reg = Reg(dataType)
    write(reg,address,bitOffset)
    read(reg,address,bitOffset)
    reg
}

def createAndDriveFlow[T <: Data](dataType : T,
                                address: BigInt,
                                bitOffset : Int = 0) : Flow[T] = {
    val flow = Flow(dataType)
    driveFlow(flow,address,bitOffset)
    flow
}

def doBitsAccumulationAndClearOnRead( that : Bits,
                                      address : BigInt,
                                      bitOffset : Int = 0): Unit = {
    assert(that.getWidth <= busDataWidth)
    val reg = Reg(that)
    reg := reg | that
    read(reg,address,bitOffset)
    onRead(address){
        reg := that
    }
}

def readStreamNonBlocking[T <: Data] (that : Stream[T],
                                      address: BigInt,
                                      validBitOffset : Int,
                                      payloadBitOffset : Int) : Unit = {
    that.ready := False
    onRead(address){
        that.ready := True
    }
    read(that.valid ,address,validBitOffset)
    read(that.payload,address,payloadBitOffset)
}

def readMultiWord(that : Data,
                  address : BigInt) : Unit = {
    val wordCount = (widthOf(that) - 1) / busDataWidth + 1
    val valueBits = that.asBits.resize(wordCount*busDataWidth)
    val words = (0 until wordCount).map(id => valueBits(id * busDataWidth ,
↳busDataWidth bit))
    for (wordId <- (0 until wordCount)) {
        read(words(wordId), address + wordId*busDataWidth/8)
    }
}

```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

    }
  }

  def writeMultiWord(that : Data,
                    address : BigInt) : Unit = {
    val wordCount = (widthOf(that) - 1) / busDataWidth + 1
    for (wordId <- (0 until wordCount)) {
      write(
        that = new DataWrapper{
          override def getBitsWidth: Int =
            Math.min(busDataWidth, widthOf(that) - wordId * busDataWidth)

          override def assignFromBits(value : Bits): Unit = {
            that.assignFromBits(
              bits    = value.resized,
              offset  = wordId * busDataWidth,
              bitCount = getBitsWidth bits)
          }
        }, address = address + wordId * busDataWidth / 8, 0
      )
    }
  }
}

```

## BusSlaveFactoryDelayed

Let's implement classes that will be used to store primitives :

```

trait BusSlaveFactoryElement

// Ask to make `that` readable when a access is done on `address`.
// bitOffset specify where `that` is placed on the answer
case class BusSlaveFactoryRead(that : Data,
                              address : BigInt,
                              bitOffset : Int) extends BusSlaveFactoryElement

// Ask to make `that` writable when a access is done on `address`.
// bitOffset specify where `that` get bits from the request
case class BusSlaveFactoryWrite(that : Data,
                                address : BigInt,
                                bitOffset : Int) extends BusSlaveFactoryElement

// Ask to execute `doThat` when a write access is done on `address`
case class BusSlaveFactoryOnWrite(address : BigInt,
                                  doThat : () => Unit) extends BusSlaveFactoryElement

// Ask to execute `doThat` when a read access is done on `address`
case class BusSlaveFactoryOnRead( address : BigInt,
                                  doThat : () => Unit) extends BusSlaveFactoryElement

// Ask to constantly drive `that` with the data bus
// bitOffset specify where `that` get bits from the request
case class BusSlaveFactoryNonStopWrite(that : Data,
                                       bitOffset : Int) extends BusSlaveFactoryElement

```

Then let's implement the BusSlaveFactoryDelayed itself :

```

trait BusSlaveFactoryDelayed extends BusSlaveFactory{
  // elements is an array of all BusSlaveFactoryElement requested
  val elements = ArrayBuffer[BusSlaveFactoryElement]()

  // elementsPerAddress is more structured than elements, it group all
  ↪BusSlaveFactoryElement per requested addresses
  val elementsPerAddress = collection.mutable.HashMap[BigInt,
  ↪ArrayBuffer[BusSlaveFactoryElement]]()

  private def addAddressableElement(e : BusSlaveFactoryElement, address : BigInt) = {
    elements += e
    elementsPerAddress.getOrElseUpdate(address,
  ↪ArrayBuffer[BusSlaveFactoryElement]()) += e
  }

  override def read(that : Data,
    address : BigInt,
    bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit = {
    assert(bitOffset + that.getBitsWidth <= busDataWidth)
    addAddressableElement(BusSlaveFactoryRead(that, address, bitOffset), address)
  }

  override def write(that : Data,
    address : BigInt,
    bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit = {
    assert(bitOffset + that.getBitsWidth <= busDataWidth)
    addAddressableElement(BusSlaveFactoryWrite(that, address, bitOffset), address)
  }

  def onWrite(address : BigInt)(doThat : => Unit) : Unit = {
    addAddressableElement(BusSlaveFactoryOnWrite(address, () => doThat), address)
  }
  def onRead (address : BigInt)(doThat : => Unit) : Unit = {
    addAddressableElement(BusSlaveFactoryOnRead(address, () => doThat), address)
  }

  def nonStopWrite( that : Data,
    bitOffset : Int = 0) : Unit = {
    assert(bitOffset + that.getBitsWidth <= busDataWidth)
    elements += BusSlaveFactoryNonStopWrite(that, bitOffset)
  }

  //This is the only thing that should be implement by class that extends
  ↪BusSlaveFactoryDelayed
  def build() : Unit

  component.addPrePopTask(() => build())
}

```

## AvalonMMSlaveFactory

First let's implement the companion object that provide the compatible AvalonMM configuration object that correspond to the following table :

Pin name	Type	Description
read	Bool	High one cycle to produce a read request
write	Bool	High one cycle to produce a write request
address	UInt(addressWidth bits)	Byte granularity but word aligned
writeData	Bits(dataWidth bits)	
readDataValid	Bool	High to respond a read command
readData	Bool(dataWidth bits)	Valid when readDataValid is high

```
object AvalonMMSlaveFactory{
  def getAvalonConfig( addressWidth : Int,
                      dataWidth : Int) = {
    AvalonMMConfig.pipelined( //Create a simple pipelined configuration of the
    ↪Avalon Bus
    addressWidth = addressWidth,
    dataWidth = dataWidth
  ).copy( //Change some parameters of the configuration
    useByteEnable = false,
    useWaitRequestn = false
  )
}

def apply(bus : AvalonMM) = new AvalonMMSlaveFactory(bus)
}
```

Then, let's implement the AvalonMMSlaveFactory itself.

```
class AvalonMMSlaveFactory(bus : AvalonMM) extends BusSlaveFactoryDelayed{
  assert(bus.c == AvalonMMSlaveFactory.getAvalonConfig(bus.c.addressWidth,bus.c.
  ↪dataWidth))

  val readAtCmd = Flow(Bits(bus.c.dataWidth bits))
  val readAtRsp = readAtCmd.stage()

  bus.readDataValid := readAtRsp.valid
  bus.readData := readAtRsp.payload

  readAtCmd.valid := bus.read
  readAtCmd.payload := 0

  override def build(): Unit = {
    for(element <- elements) element match {
      case element : BusSlaveFactoryNonStopWrite =>
        element.that.assignFromBits(bus.writeData(element.bitOffset, element.that.
        ↪getBitsWidth bits))
      case _ =>
    }

    for((address,jobs) <- elementsPerAddress){
      when(bus.address === address){
        when(bus.write){
          for(element <- jobs) element match{
            case element : BusSlaveFactoryWrite => {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        element.that.assignFromBits(bus.writeData(element.bitOffset, element.
→that.getBitsWidth bits))
    }
    case element : BusSlaveFactoryOnWrite => element.doThat()
    case _ =>
    }
}
when(bus.read){
    for(element <- jobs) element match{
        case element : BusSlaveFactoryRead => {
            readAtCmd.payload(element.bitOffset, element.that.getBitsWidth bits) :=_
→element.that.asBits
        }
        case element : BusSlaveFactoryOnRead => element.doThat()
        case _ =>
        }
    }
}
}
}

override def busDataWidth: Int = bus.c.dataWidth
}

```

### 15.1.4 Conclusion

That's all, you can check one example that use this `Apb3SlaveFactory` to create an `Apb3UartCtrl` [there](#).

If you want to add the support of a new memory bus, it's very simple you just need to implement another variation of the `BusSlaveFactoryDelayed` trait. The `Apb3SlaveFactory` is probably a good starting point :D

## 15.2 How to HACK this documentation

If you want to add your page to this documentation you need to add your source file in the appropriate section. I opted to create a structure that resample the various section of the documentation, this is not strictly necessary, but for clarity sake, highly encourage.

This documentation uses a recursive index tree: every folder have a special `index.rst` files that tell sphinx witch file, and in what order put it in the documentation tree.

### 15.2.1 Title convention

Sphinx is very smart, the document structure is deduced from how you use non alphanumerical characters (like: `= - ` : ' " ~ ^ _ * + # < >`), you only need to be consistent. Still, for consistency sakes we use this progression:

- `=` over and underline for section titles
- `-` underline for titles
- `-` underline for paragraph
- `^` for subparagraph

## 15.2.2 Wavedrom integration

This documentation makes use of the `sphinxcontrib-wavedrom` plugin, So you can specify a timing diagram, or a register description with the `WaveJSON` syntax like so:

```
.. wavedrom::

{ "signal": [
  { "name": "pclk", "wave": 'p.....' },
  { "name": "Pclk", "wave": 'P.....' },
  { "name": "nclk", "wave": 'n.....' },
  { "name": "Nclk", "wave": 'N.....' },
  {} ,
  { "name": 'clk0', "wave": 'phnlPHNL' },
  { "name": 'clk1', "wave": 'xhlhLHL.' },
  { "name": 'clk2', "wave": 'hpHplnLn' },
  { "name": 'clk3', "wave": 'nhNhplPl' },
  { "name": 'clk4', "wave": 'xlh.L.Hx' },
]]
```

and you get:



**Note:** if you want the Wavedrom diagram to be present in the pdf export, you need to use the “non relaxed” JSON dialect. long story short, no javascript code and use " around key value (Eg. "name").

you can describe register mapping with the same syntax:

```
{"reg": [
  {"bits": 8, "name": "things"},
  {"bits": 2, "name": "stuff" },
  {"bits": 6},
],
"config": { "bits":16,"lanes":1 }
}
```



### 15.2.3 New section

if you want to add a new section you need to specify in the top index, the index file of the new section. I suggest to name the folder like the section name, but is not required; Sphinx will take the name of the section from the title of the index file.

#### example

I want to document the new feature in SpinalHDL, and I want to create a section for it; let's call it **Cheese**

So I need to create a folder named Cheese (name is not important), and in it create a index file like:

```
=====
Cheese
=====

.. toctree::
:glob:

introduction
*
```

---

**Note:** The `.. toctree::` directive accept some parameters, in this case `:glob:` makes so you can use the `*` to include all the remaining files.

---

---

**Note:** The file path is relative to the index file, if you want to specify the absolute path, you need to prepend `/`

---

---

**Note:** `introduction.rst` will be always the first on the list because it's specified in the index file. Other files will be included in alphabetical order.

---

Now I can add the `introduction.rst` and other files like `cheddar.rst`, `stilton.rst`, etc.

The only thing remaining to do is to add cheese to the top index file like so:

```
Welcome to SpinalHDL's documentation!
=====

.. toctree::
:maxdepth: 2
:titlesonly:

rst/About SpinalHDL/index
rst/Getting Started/index
rst/Data types/index
rst/Structuring/index
rst/Semantic/index
rst/Sequential logic/index
rst/Design errors/index
rst/Other language features/index
rst/Libraries/index
rst/Simulation/index
rst/Examples/index
rst/Legacy/index
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
rst/Developers area/index
rst/Cheese/index
```

that's it, now you can add all you want in cheese and all pages will show up in the documentation.

## 15.3 Types

### 15.3.1 Introduction

The language provides 5 base types and 2 composite types that can be used.

- Base types : Bool, Bits, UInt for unsigned integers, SInt for signed integers, Enum.
- Composite types : Bundle, Vec.



Those types and their usage (with examples) are explained hereafter.

About the fixed point support it's documented [there](#)

### 15.3.2 Bool

This is the standard *boolean* type that correspond to a bit.

#### Declaration

The syntax to declare such as value is as follows:

Syntax	Description	Return
Bool or Bool()	Create a Bool	Bool
True	Create a Bool assigned with <code>true</code>	Bool
False	Create a Bool assigned with <code>false</code>	Bool
Bool(value : Boolean)	Create a Bool assigned with a Scala Boolean	Bool

Using this type into SpinalHDL yields:

```

val myBool = Bool()
myBool := False      // := is the assignment operator
myBool := Bool(false) // Use a Scala Boolean to create a literal

```

## Operators

The following operators are available for the Bool type

Operator	Description	Return type
!x	Logical NOT	Bool
x && y x & y	Logical AND	Bool
x    y x   y	Logical OR	Bool
x ^ y	Logical XOR	Bool
x.set[()]	Set x to True	
x.clear[()]	Set x to False	
x.rise[()]	Return True when x was low at the last cycle and is now high	Bool
x.rise(initAt : Bool)	Same as x.rise but with a reset value	Bool
x.fall[()]	Return True when x was high at the last cycle and is now low	Bool
x.fall(initAt : Bool)	Same as x.fall but with a reset value	Bool
x.setWhen(cond)	Set x when cond is True	Bool
x.clearWhen(cond)	Clear x when cond is True	Bool

### 15.3.3 The BitVector family - (Bits, UInt, SInt)

**BitVector** is a family of types for storing multiple bits of information in a single value. This type has three subtypes that can be used to model different behaviours:

**Bits** do not convey any sign information whereas the **UInt** (unsigned integer) and **SInt** (signed integer) provide the required operations to compute correct results if signed / unsigned arithmetics is used.

#### Declaration syntax

Syntax	Description	Return
Bits/UInt/SInt [()]	Create a BitVector, bits count is inferred	Bits/UInt/SInt
Bits/UInt/SInt(x bits)	Create a BitVector with x bits	Bits/UInt/SInt
B/U/S(value : Int[,width : BitCount])	Create a BitVector assigned with 'value'	Bits/UInt/SInt
B/U/S"[size]base]value"	Create a BitVector assigned with 'value'	Bits/UInt/SInt
B/U/S([x bits], element, ...)	Create a BitVector assigned with the value specified by elements (see bellow table)	Bits/UInt/SInt

Elements could be defined as follows:



Element syntax	Description
<code>x : Int -&gt; y : Boolean/Bool</code>	Set bit x with y
<code>x : Range -&gt; y : Boolean/Bool</code>	Set each bits in range x with y
<code>x : Range -&gt; y : T</code>	Set bits in range x with y
<code>x : Range -&gt; y : String</code>	Set bits in range x with y The string format follow same rules than B/U/S"xyz" one
<code>x : Range -&gt; y : T</code>	Set bits in range x with y
<code>default -&gt; y : Boolean/Bool</code>	Set all unconnected bits with the y value. This feature could only be use to do assignments without the U/B/S prefix

You can define a Range values

Range syntax	Description	Width
<code>(x downto y)</code>	<code>[x:y] x &gt;= y</code>	<code>x-y+1</code>
<code>(x to y)</code>	<code>[x:y] x &lt;= y</code>	<code>y-x+1</code>
<code>(x until y)</code>	<code>[x:y[ x &lt; y</code>	<code>y-x</code>

```

val myUInt = UInt(8 bits)
myUInt := U(2,8 bits)
myUInt := U(2)
myUInt := U"0000_0101" // Base per default is binary => 5
myUInt := U"h1A"      // Base could be x (base 16)
                        //           h (base 16)
                        //           d (base 10)
                        //           o (base 8)
                        //           b (base 2)

myUInt := U"8'h1A"
myUInt := 2           // You can use scala Int as literal value

val myBool := myUInt === U(7 -> true, (6 downto 0) -> false)
val myBool := myUInt === U(myUInt.range -> true)

//For assignement purposes, you can omit the B/U/S, which also allow the use of the
->[default -> ???] feature
myUInt := (default -> true) //Assign myUInt with "11111111"
myUInt := (myUInt.range -> true) //Assign myUInt with "11111111"
myUInt := (7 -> true, default -> false) //Assign myUInt with "10000000"
myUInt := ((4 downto 1) -> true, default -> false) //Assign myUInt with "00011110"

```

## Operators

Operator	Description	Return
<code>~x</code>	Bitwise NOT	$T(w(x) \text{ bits})$
<code>x &amp; y</code>	Bitwise AND	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)) \text{ bits})$
<code>x   y</code>	Bitwise OR	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)) \text{ bits})$
<code>x ^ y</code>	Bitwise XOR	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)) \text{ bits})$
<code>x(y)</code>	Readbit, $y : \text{Int}/\text{UInt}$	Bool
<code>x(hi,lo)</code>	Read bitfield, $hi : \text{Int}, lo : \text{Int}$	$T(hi-lo+1 \text{ bits})$
<code>x(offset,width)</code>	Read bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	$T(\text{width bits})$
<code>x(y) := z</code>	Assign bits, $y : \text{Int}/\text{UInt}$	Bool
<code>x(hi,lo) := z</code>	Assign bitfield, $hi : \text{Int}, lo : \text{Int}$	$T(hi-lo+1 \text{ bits})$
<code>x(offset,width) := z</code>	Assign bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	$T(\text{width bits})$
<code>x.msb</code>	Return the most significant bit	Bool
<code>x.lsb</code>	Return the least significant bit	Bool
<code>x.range</code>	Return the range (x.high downto 0)	Range
<code>x.high</code>	Return the upper bound of the type x	Int
<code>x.xorR</code>	XOR all bits of x	Bool
<code>x.orR</code>	OR all bits of x	Bool
<code>x.andR</code>	AND all bits of x	Bool
<code>x.clearAll[()]</code>	Clear all bits	T
<code>x.setAll[()]</code>	Set all bits	T
<code>x.setAllTo(value : Boolean)</code>	Set all bits to the given Boolean value	
<code>x.setAllTo(value : Bool)</code>	Set all bits to the given Bool value	
<code>x.asBools</code>	Cast into a array of Bool	$\text{Vec}(\text{Bool}, \text{width}(x))$

## Masked comparison

Some time you need to check equality between a `BitVector` and a bits constant that contain hole (don't care values).

There is an example about how to do that :

```
val myBits = Bits(8 bits)
val itMatch = myBits === M"00--10--"
```

### 15.3.4 Bits

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x &gt;&gt; y</code>	Logical shift right, $y : \text{Int}$	$T(w(x) - y \text{ bits})$
<code>x &gt;&gt; y</code>	Logical shift right, $y : \text{UInt}$	$T(w(x) \text{ bits})$
<code>x &lt;&lt; y</code>	Logical shift left, $y : \text{Int}$	$T(w(x) + y \text{ bits})$
<code>x &lt;&lt; y</code>	Logical shift left, $y : \text{UInt}$	$T(w(x) + \max(y) \text{ bits})$
<code>x.rotateLeft(y)</code>	Logical left rotation, $y : \text{UInt}$	$T(w(x))$
<code>x.resize(y)</code>	Return a resized copy of x, filled with zero, $y : \text{Int}$	$T(y \text{ bits})$

### 15.3.5 UInt, SInt

Operator	Description	Return
$x + y$	Addition	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)) \text{ bits})$
$x - y$	Subtraction	$T(\max(w(x), w(y)) \text{ bits})$
$x * y$	Multiplication	$T(w(x) + w(y) \text{ bits})$
$x > y$	Greater than	Bool
$x \geq y$	Greater than or equal	Bool
$x < y$	Less than	Bool
$x \leq y$	Less than or equal	Bool
$x \gg y$	Arithmetic shift right, $y : \text{Int}$	$T(w(x) - y \text{ bits})$
$x \gg y$	Arithmetic shift right, $y : \text{UInt}$	$T(w(x) \text{ bits})$
$x \ll y$	Arithmetic shift left, $y : \text{Int}$	$T(w(x) + y \text{ bits})$
$x \ll y$	Arithmetic shift left, $y : \text{UInt}$	$T(w(x) + \max(y) \text{ bits})$
$x.\text{resize}(y)$	Return an arithmetic resized copy of $x$ , $y : \text{Int}$	$T(y \text{ bits})$

### 15.3.6 Bool, Bits, UInt, SInt

Operator	Description	Return
$x.\text{asBits}$	Binary cast in Bits	$\text{Bits}(w(x) \text{ bits})$
$x.\text{asUInt}$	Binary cast in UInt	$\text{UInt}(w(x) \text{ bits})$
$x.\text{asSInt}$	Binary cast in SInt	$\text{SInt}(w(x) \text{ bits})$

### 15.3.7 Vec

Declaration	Description
$\text{Vec}(\text{type} : \text{Data}, \text{size} : \text{Int})$	Create a vector of size time the given type
$\text{Vec}(x, y, \dots)$	Create a vector where indexes point to given elements. this construct support mixed element width

Operator	Description	Return
$x(y)$	Read element $y$ , $y : \text{Int}/\text{UInt}$	$T$
$x(y) := z$	Assign element $y$ with $z$ , $y : \text{Int}/\text{UInt}$	

```

val myVecOfSInt = Vec(SInt(8 bits), 2)
myVecOfSInt(0) := 2
myVecOfSInt(1) := myVecOfSInt(0) + 3

val myVecOfMixedUInt = Vec(UInt(3 bits), UInt(5 bits), UInt(8 bits))

val x, y, z = UInt(8 bits)
val myVecOf_xyz_ref = Vec(x, y, z)
for(element <- myVecOf_xyz_ref){
  element := 0 //Assign x,y,z with the value 0
}
myVecOf_xyz_ref(1) := 3 //Assign y with the value 3

```

### 15.3.8 Bundle

Bundles could be used to model data structure line buses and interfaces.

All attributes that extends Data (Bool, Bits, UInt, ...) that are defined inside the bundle are considered as part of the bundle.

#### Simple example (RGB/VGA)

The following example show an RGB bundle definition with some internal function.

```
case class RGB(channelWidth : Int) extends Bundle{
  val red    = UInt(channelWidth bits)
  val green  = UInt(channelWidth bits)
  val blue   = UInt(channelWidth bits)

  def isBlack : Bool = red === 0 && green === 0 && blue === 0
  def isWhite : Bool = {
    val max = U((channelWidth-1 downto 0) -> true)
    return red === max && green === max && blue === max
  }
}
```

Then you can also incorporate a Bundle inside Bundle as deeply as you want:

```
case class VGA(channelWidth : Int) extends Bundle{
  val hsync = Bool
  val vsync = Bool
  val color = RGB(channelWidth)
}
```

And finally instantiate your Bundles inside the hardware :

```
val vgaIn  = VGA(8)           //Create a RGB instance
val vgaOut = VGA(8)
vgaOut := vgaIn               //Assign the whole bundle
vgaOut.color.green := 0       //Fix the green to zero
val vgaInRgbIsBlack = vgaIn.rgb.isBlack //Get if the vgaIn rgb is black
```

If you want to specify your bundle as an input or an output of a Component, you have to do it by the following way :

```
class MyComponent extends Component{
  val io = Bundle{
    val cmd = in(RGB(8)) //Don't forget the bracket around the bundle.
    val rsp = out(RGB(8))
  }
}
```

## Interface example (APB)

If you want to define an interface, let's imagine an APB interface, you can also use bundles :

```
class APB(addressWidth: Int,
          dataWidth: Int,
          selWidth : Int,
          useSlaveError : Boolean) extends Bundle {

  val PADDR      = UInt(addressWidth bit)
  val PSEL       = Bits(selWidth bits)
  val PENABLE    = Bool
  val PREADY     = Bool
  val PWRITE     = Bool
  val PWDATA     = Bits(dataWidth bit)
  val PRDATA     = Bits(dataWidth bit)
  val PSLVERROR  = if(useSlaveError) Bool else null //This wire is created only
↳when useSlaveError is true
}

// Example of usage :
val bus = APB(addressWidth = 8,
              dataWidth = 32,
              selWidth = 4,
              useSlaveError = false)
```

One good practice is to group all construction parameters inside a configuration class. This could make the parametrization much easier later in your components, especially if you have to reuse the same configuration at multiple places. Also if one time you need to add another construction parameter, you will only have to add it into the configuration class and everywhere this one is instantiated:

```
case class APBConfig(addressWidth: Int,
                     dataWidth: Int,
                     selWidth : Int,
                     useSlaveError : Boolean)

class APB(val config: APBConfig) extends Bundle { //[[val] config, make the
↳configuration public
  val PADDR      = UInt(config.addressWidth bit)
  val PSEL       = Bits(config.selWidth bits)
  val PENABLE    = Bool
  val PREADY     = Bool
  val PWRITE     = Bool
  val PWDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
  val PRDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
  val PSLVERROR  = if(config.useSlaveError) Bool else null
}

// Example of usage
val apbConfig = APBConfig(addressWidth = 8,dataWidth = 32,selWidth = 4,useSlaveError
↳= false)
val busA = APB(apbConfig)
val busB = APB(apbConfig)
```

Then at some points, you will probably need to use the APB bus as master or as slave interface of some components. To do that you can define some functions :

```

import spinal.core._

case class APBConfig(addressWidth: Int,
                    dataWidth: Int,
                    selWidth : Int,
                    useSlaveError : Boolean)

class APB(val config: APBConfig) extends Bundle {
  val PADDR      = UInt(config.addressWidth bit)
  val PSEL       = Bits(config.selWidth bits)
  val PENABLE    = Bool
  val PREADY     = Bool
  val PWRITE     = Bool
  val PWDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
  val PRDATA     = Bits(config.dataWidth bit)
  val PSLVERROR  = if(config.useSlaveError) Bool else null

  def asMaster(): this.type = {
    out(PADDR,PSEL,PENABLE,PWRITE,PWDATA)
    in(PREADY,PRDATA)
    if(config.useSlaveError) in(PSLVERROR)
    this
  }

  def asSlave(): this.type = this.asMaster().flip() //Flip reverse all in out
  ↪configuration.
}

// Example of usage
val apbConfig = APBConfig(addressWidth = 8,dataWidth = 32,selWidth = 4,useSlaveError
  ↪= false)
val io = new Bundle{
  val masterBus = APB(apbConfig).asMaster()
  val slaveBus  = APB(apbConfig).asSlave()
}

```

Then to make that better, the spinal.lib integrate a small master slave utile named IMasterSlave. When a bundle extends IMasterSlave, it should implement/override the asMaster function. It give you the ability to setup a master or a slave interface by a smoother way :

```

val apbConfig = APBConfig(addressWidth = 8,dataWidth = 32,selWidth = 4,useSlaveError
  ↪= false)
val io = new Bundle{
  val masterBus = master(apbConfig)
  val slaveBus  = slave(apbConfig)
}

```

There is an example of an APB bus that implement this IMasterSlave :

```

//You need to import spinal.lib._ to use IMasterSlave
import spinal.core._
import spinal.lib._

case class APBConfig(addressWidth: Int,
                    dataWidth: Int,
                    selWidth : Int,
                    useSlaveError : Boolean)

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

class APB(val config: APBConfig) extends Bundle with IMasterSlave {
  val PADDR      = UInt(addressWidth bit)
  val PSEL       = Bits(selWidth bits)
  val PENABLE    = Bool
  val PREADY     = Bool
  val PWRITE     = Bool
  val PWDATA     = Bits(dataWidth bit)
  val PRDATA     = Bits(dataWidth bit)
  val PSLVERR    = if(useSlaveError) Bool else null //This wire is created only
↳when useSlaveError is true

  override def asMaster() : Unit = {
    out(PADDR,PSEL,PENABLE,PWRITE,PWDATA)
    in(PREADY,PRDATA)
    if(useSlaveError) in(PSLVERR)
  }
  //The asSlave is by default the flipped version of asMaster.
}

```

### 15.3.9 Enum

SpinalHDL support enumeration with some encodings :

En-cod-ing	Bit width	Description
native		Use the VHDL enumeration system, this is the default encoding
binarySe-quan-cial	log2Up(statesCount)	Use Bits to store states in declaration order (value from 0 to n-1)
binary-One-Hot	state-Count	Use Bits to store state. Each bit correspond to one state

Define a enumeration type:

```

object UartCtrlTxState extends SpinalEnum { // Or
↳SpinalEnum(defaultEncoding=encodingOfYourChoice)
  val sIdle, sStart, sData, sParity, sStop = newElement()
}

```

Instantiate a enumeration signal and assign it :

```

val stateNext = UartCtrlTxState() // Or UartCtrlTxState(encoding=encodingOfYourChoice)
stateNext := UartCtrlTxState.sIdle

//You can also import the enumeration to have the visibility on its elements
import UartCtrlTxState._
stateNext := sIdle

```

### 15.3.10 Data (Bool, Bits, UInt, SInt, Enum, Bundle, Vec)

All hardware types extends the Data class, which mean that all of them provide following operators :

Operator	Description	Return
<code>x === y</code>	Equality	Bool
<code>x !== y</code>	Inequality	Bool
<code>x.getWidth</code>	Return bitcount	Int
<code>x ## y</code>	Concatenate, x->high, y->low	Bits(width(x) + width(y) bits)
<code>Cat(x)</code>	Concatenate list, first element on lsb, x : Array[Data]	Bits(sumOfWidth bits)
<code>Mux(cond,x,y)</code>	if cond ? x : y	T(max(w(x), w(y) bits)
<code>x.asBits</code>	Cast in Bits	Bits(width(x) bits)
<code>x.assignFromBits(bits)</code>	Assign from Bits	
<code>x.assignFromBits(bits,hi,lo)</code>	Assign bitfield, hi : Int, lo : Int	T(hi-lo+1 bits)
<code>x.assignFromBits(bits,offset,width)</code>	Assign bitfield, offset: UInt, width: Int	T(width bits)
<code>x.getZero</code>	Get equivalent type assigned with zero	T

### 15.3.11 Literals as signal declaration

Literals are generally use as a constant value. But you can also use them to do two things in a single one :

- Define a wire which is assigned with a constant value

There is an example :

```

val cond = in Bool
val red = in UInt(4 bits)
...
val valid = False           //Bool wire which is by default assigned with False
val value = U"0100"         //UInt wire of 4 bits which is by default assigned with 4
when(cond){
  valid := True
  value := red
}

```



## WELCOME TO SPINALHDL'S DOCUMENTATION!

### 16.1 Site purpose and structure

This site presents the *SpinalHDL* language and how to use it on concrete examples.

If you are learning the language from scratch, [this presentation](#) is probably a good starting point.

### 16.2 What is SpinalHDL ?

SpinalHDL is an [open source](#) high-level hardware description language. It can be used as an alternative to VHDL or Verilog and has several advantages over them.

Also, SpinalHDL is not an HLS approach. Its goal is not to push something abstract into flip-flops and gates, but by using simple elements (flip-flops, gates, if / case statments) create new a abstraction level and help the designer to reuse their code and not write the same thing over and over again.

---

**Note:** SpinalHDL is *fully interoperable* with standard VHDL/Verilog-based EDA tools (simulators and synthetizers) as the output generated by the toolchain could be VHDL or Verilog. It also enables mixed designs where SpinalHDL components inter-operate with VHDL or Verilog IPs.

---

#### 16.2.1 Advantages of using SpinalHDL over VHDL / Verilog

As SpinalHDL is based on a high-level language, it provides several advantages to improve your hardware coding:

1. **No more endless wiring** - Create and connect complex buses like AXI in one single line.
2. **Evolving capabilities** - Create your own bus definitions and abstraction layers.
3. **Reduce code size** - By a high factor, especially for wiring. This enables you to have a better overview of your code base, increase your productivity and create fewer headaches.
4. **Free and user friendly IDE** - Thanks to Scala tools for auto-completion, error highlighting, navigation shortcuts, and many others.
5. **Powerful and easy type conversions** - Bidirectional translation between any data type and bits. Useful when loading a complex data structure from a CPU interface.
6. **Loop detection** - Tools check that there are no combinatorial loops / latches.
7. **Clock domain safety** - The tools inform you that there are no unintentional clock domain crossings.
8. **Generic design** - There are no restrictions to the genericity of your hardware description by using Scala constructs.

### 16.2.2 License

SpinalHDL uses two licenses, one for spinal.core, and one for spinal.lib.

**spinal.core** (the compiler) is under the LGPL license, which could be summarized with following statements:

- You can make money with your SpinalHDL description and its generated RTL.
- You don't have to share your SpinalHDL description and its generated RTL.
- There are no fees and no royalties.
- If you make improvements to the SpinalHDL core, please share your modifications to make the tool better for everybody.

**spinal.lib** (a general purpose library of components/tools/interfaces) is under the permissive MIT license.

## 16.3 Getting started

Want to try it for yourself? Then jump to the *getting started section* and have fun!

## 16.4 Links

SpinalHDL repository:

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalHDL>

A short show case (PDF):

<http://spinalhdl.github.io/SpinalDoc/motivation/>

Presentation of the language (PDF):

<http://spinalhdl.github.io/SpinalDoc/presentation/>

SBT base project:

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalTemplateSbt>

Workshop:

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/SpinalWorkshop>

VexRiscv CPU and SoC:

<https://github.com/SpinalHDL/VexRiscv>

StackOverflow (tag: SpinalHDL) :

[StackOverflow](#)

Google group:

<https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/spinalhdl-hardware-description-language>

chat on gitter